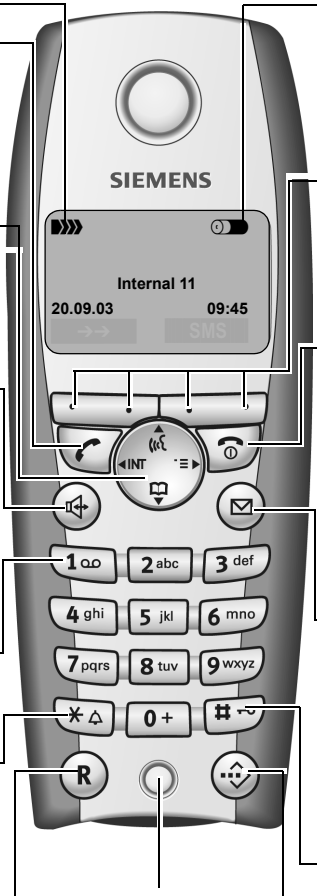
SIEMENS

Be inspired

Gigaset
C1 C2
S1 SL1

at ISDN basestations

S1: The handset at a glance



Reception strength

Talk key

- Answer a call
- Initiate dialling
- Switch from handsfree to "earpiece mode"

Control key

Opens the menu, directory, internal list, voice selection. Navigation in the input field

Handsfree Key

- Switch from "earpiece" to handsfree mode
- Lights up: Handsfree is activated
- Flashes: incoming call, automatic last number redial

Key 1

Answering machine (hold down)

Star key

- Ringer on/off (press for approx. 2 seconds)
- Toggles between upper/ lower case and digits

Recall key

Initiate enquiry call

Charge status

flat full

flashes: battery is almost flat or is charging

Current functions and display keys

The display keys give you access to the functions shown in the display.

End call key, On/Off key

- End call
- Cancel function
- Return to idle status (hold down)
- Handset on/off (in idle status, hold down)

Message key

- Access to SMS, calls list, answering machine (on base with AM)
- Flashes: new SMS, calls, messages

Hash key

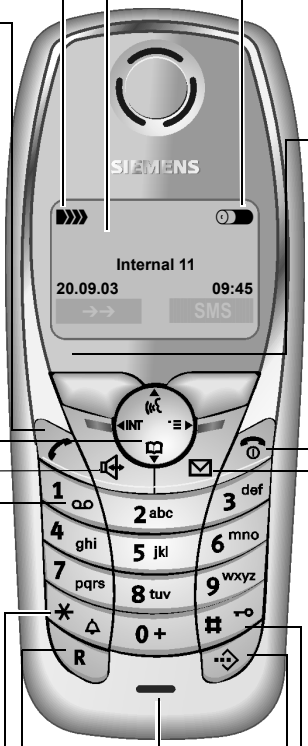
Keypad lock on/off (long press)

Speed dial list key

Open the speed dial list

Microphone

SL1: The handset at a glance



Reception strength

Display (display screen)

Charge status

flat full

flashes: battery is almost flat or is charging

Talk key

- Answer a call
- Initiate dialling
- Switch from handsfree to "earpiece mode"

Current functions and display keys

The display keys give you access to the functions shown in the display.

Control key

Opens the menu, directory, internal list, voice selection. Navigation in the input field

End call key, On/Off key

- End call
- Cancel function
- Return to idle status (hold down)
- Handset on/off (in idle status, hold down)

Handsfree Key

- Switch from "earpiece" to handsfree mode
- Lights up: Handsfree is activated
- Flashes: incoming call, automatic last number redial

Message key

- Access to SMS, calls list, answering machine (on base with AM)
- Flashes: new SMS, calls, messages

Key 1

Answering machine (long press)

Star key

- Ringer on/off (press for approx. 2 seconds)
- Toggles between upper/ lower case and digits

Hash key

Keypad lock on/off (long press)

Microphone

Connector jack

for headset and PC interface

Speed dial list key

Open the speed dial list

Recall key

Initiate enquiry call

Contents

S1: The handset at a glance 1

SL1: The handset at a glance 2

Safety precautions 7

Means of display 8

Preparing to use the handset 9

Operating the handset – menu guidance 11
Operating the base – Getting started wizard 14

Registering/de-registering handsets 20

Making calls 22

Making external calls and ending a call 22
Making internal calls 22
Accepting a call 23
Withholding Calling Line Identification 23
Handsfree 25
Picking up a call during ring delay (Call PickUp) 25
Rejecting a call 26
Reserving a line 26
Defining the outgoing MSN for the next call 26
Ringback when busy (CCBS) / when the call is not answered (CCNR) 27
Identify caller 28

Functions during a call 29

Muting the handset 29
Making a call to several users 29
Forwarding an incoming call – CD (Call Deflection) 32
Transferring calls 33
Working with call waiting for an external call – CW (Call Waiting) 33
Putting a call on hold (Call Hold) 34
Parking/continuing a call 35

Using the directory and other lists 36

Directory and speed dial list 36
Voice-activated dialling 43
Email directory 46
Display available memory 47
Last number redial list 48
Opening lists with the message key 49
Call lists 50

SMS (text messages) 53

General 53
Before you can send and receive text messages 53
Managing SMS service centres 54
Entering, editing or deleting phone numbers for SMS centres 55
Activating/deactivating SMS send centre 56
Registering/de-registering with an SMS centre 57
Memory 57
Sending a text message and the outgoing message list 58
Sending a text message to an e-mail address 62
Receiving text messages, incoming message list 63
Using new ringer tones and logos for the handset 68
Text messages to a PABX 70
Errors when sending and receiving a text message 70

Making cost-effective calls 72

Linking a call-by-call number with a phone number 72
Displaying the call duration 72
Displaying call charges 73

Operating more than one handset 76

Using a handset as a room monitor 76
Setting the Walk and Talk mode 79

Setting the answering machine 81

Assigning a receive MSN 81
Hiding/showing an answering machine 82
Specifying the number of rings before the answering machine starts 83
Activating/deactivating voice announcement of date and time 83
Setting the recording time and recording quality 83
Activating/deactivating automatic pause 84
Locking the answering machine, defining AM PIN 85
Setting the time control 85
Activating/deactivating automatic listen in on the handset 88
Activating/deactivating automatic pickup 89
Activating/deactivating automatic notification via text message 89

Security settings 91

Changing the system PIN 91
Defining authorisation 92
Emergency numbers 92

Date and Time 94

Setting the date and the time 94
Setting the alarm clock 94
Setting appointments 96

Displaying missed appointments, and anniversaries 97
Night service 98

Individual handset settings 102

Changing the display language 102
Activating/deactivating Auto Answer 102
Changing the name of the base 103
Adjusting the loudspeaker volume 103
Changing the ringer tone 104
Sound Manager 107
Vibration alarm 108
Activating/deactivating advisory tones 108
Resetting a handset to the factory setting 109

System settings 110

Changing the names for internal users 110
Setting up/deleting ISDN phone numbers (MSN) 111
Assigning a phone number (MSN) 112
Setting up the list of outgoing MSN for the next call 113
Setting up a busy signal when the MSN is being used (Busy on Busy) 114
Assigning an MSN a ringer melody 114
Setting up rejecting for the entire MSN group 115
Forwarding calls 115
Pre-assigning the call deflection destination – CD (Call Deflection) 119
Setting up automatic call forwarding when not reaching a handset 120
Setting up an internal group call group 120
Setting up ring delay 121
Activating/deactivating call waiting – CW 122
Setting an external/internal enquiry call 122
Setting up the waiting melody 123
Activate/deactivate Call beats data 124
Changing the long distance prefix 124
Configuring the answering machine in the network for fast access 125
Restoring the factory setting 127
Checking the status 127
Checking the software version 128

Operating when connected to a PABX 129

Access code 129
Activating/deactivating call transfer – ECT (Explicit Call Transfer) 129
Dialling options 130

Operating with other devices 132

Defining device type 132
Making a call with devices on an analogue connection (TAE connection) 133
Activating/deactivating repeater mode 135

Operating the answering machine directly 136

Selecting an answering machine 137
Activating/deactivating the answering machine 137
Selecting announce only and AM mode 138
Recording/changing announcements 138
Playing back/deleting announcements 139
Recording memos 139
Two-way recording 140
Picking up a call during answering machine operation 140
Playing messages 141
Returning a call during playback 142
Playing a message to another caller 142
Playing back memos 143
Setting the playback speed 143
Deleting messages/memos 143
Marking an old message or memo as "new" 145
Adding a number to the directory 145

Operating with a gate telephone 146

Assigning internal users to the gate telephone call group 146
Making calls with the gate telephone 146
Forwarding the gate telephone externally 148

Appendix 150

Care 150
Contact with liquid 150
Questions and Answers 150
Service (Customer Care) 152
Specifications 153
Character set chart 154
Predictive text 155
PC interface 157
Game "Balloon Shooter" 158
Guarantee certificate (United Kingdom) 159
Guarantee certificate (Ireland) 159

Menu Tree 161

Main menu 161
Submenu "Base Settings" 162
Submenu "Answer Machine" 165
Directory key and speed dial list key 167

Accessories 168

Index 169

Safety precautions ⚠

Fit only the **recommended rechargeable batteries (page 153)** and **of the same type**! Use no other types of batteries or non-rechargeable batteries, as they could damage health and cause personal injury.

Ensure correct polarity when fitting rechargeable batteries, and use the battery type according to these instructions (you will see polarity symbols in the handset's battery compartments).

The operation of medical appliances may be affected. Be aware of the technical conditions within the particular environment (e.g. doctor's practice).

The handset may cause an intrusive "hum" in hearing aids.

Do not install the base in bathrooms or shower rooms (page 150). The handset and base are not watertight.

Drivers must not use their phones while driving (Walk and Talk function).

Switch off your phone while on board an aircraft (Walk and Talk function). Ensure that it cannot be switched on again accidentally.

Do not use the phone in environments subject to explosion hazard (e.g. auto paint shops).

If you give your Gigaset to someone else, make sure you also give them the operating manual.

Dispose of the batteries and phone in accordance with environmental regulations.

i	Not all of the functions described in these instructions are available in all countries.

Means of display

A table under the title indicates the bases or the handset for which this function is available.

Example: A function concerning bases with answering machine:

On the base:	CX150isdn	SX150isdn	CX253isdn	SX255isdn	SX353isdn

Example: The vibration alarm of the Gigaset SL1:

On the MT:	SL1

Preparing to use the handset

Removing protective film

The display is protected by a plastic film.
Please remove the protective film!

Inserting the batteries

- Insert the batteries **ensuring correct polarity** (see figure on left).
- Place the cover on the battery compartment **about 3 mm down from the latch** and push it **up** until it clicks into position.

⚡	Use only the rechargeable batteries recommended by Siemens on page 153! Never use conventional batteries (non-rechargeable) or other battery types as this may cause significant damage to health and property. For example, the jacket of the battery could be destroyed (hazardous). The phone could also malfunction or be damaged.

Opening the battery compartment
Press on the grooved area of the cover and slide back.

Charging batteries

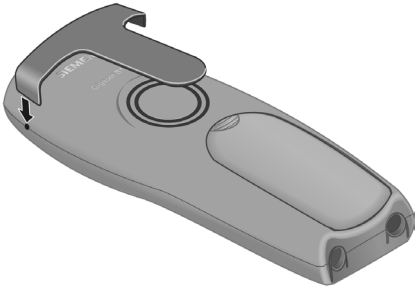
The charging is indicated in the upper right of the display where the charging status flashes:

- Batteries (almost) empty
- Batteries $^1/_3$ charged
- Batteries $^2/_3$ charged
- Batt. fully charged

i	To register **additional handsets**, refer to page 20.

Your handset is now ready for operation. To correctly record the time of calls and, if applicable, messages you must now set the date and time. Depending on the network provider, the date and time are updated automatically by the telephone network with every outgoing call. All the settings necessary for operating the telephone can also be set up easily with the Getting started wizard (page 14).

Attaching the belt clip



Push the belt clip onto the back of the handset until the lugs click into the recesses on either side of the handset.

Activating/deactivating the handset

To activate the handset, press the end call key and hold. You will hear a confirmation tone (rising tone sequence).

To deactivate the handset, press the end call key again in the idle status and **hold** (confirmation tone).

i	The deactivated handset activates automatically when placed in the base or charger.

Activating/deactivating the keypad lock

You can lock the handset keypad if, for example, you are carrying the handset. This protects the keypad against inadvertent activation.

Press and **hold** the hash key. You will hear a confirmation tone and the symbol will appear in the display.

To **deactivate**

- on S1, C1, C2:
  Press the hash key again and **hold** (confirmation tone).
- On SL1:

	Press the hash key **again** and hold.
OK	Press the display key to deactivate the keypad lock. If the display key is not pressed within 5 seconds, the handset returns to keypad lock.

i	◆ The key lock switches itself off automatically if you receive a call. It re-activates when the call is finished. ◆ When the keypad lock is active, you cannot even call emergency numbers. ◆ The keypad lock is still indicated if you have installed a logo as display graphic (page 69).

Operating the handset – menu guidance

Special keys

Control key

The control key is the central operating element. It has four black arrows and the corresponding icons. Pressing the various icons (up, down, right, or left) opens a different function. The side you have to press is shown by a black triangle in the operating instructions, e.g.: ▶ key for right = open menu.

Example:

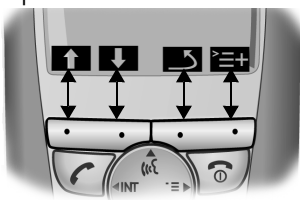
Different functions of the control key:

	In the idle status	In lists and menus	In an input field
▲	Initiate voice-activated dialling (long press)	Scroll up	Move the cursor up a line
▼	Open directory	Scroll down	Move the cursor down a line
▶	Open the menu	Confirm the selected option (same as OK)	Move the cursor to the right
◀	Open list of handsets	Go back one menu level, or cancel	Move the cursor to the left

Display keys

The display keys are the **horizontal rocker keys** just below the display. Their function changes depending on the particular operating situation. The current function is shown in the display directly above the key to which it relates.

Example:



The various **display symbols** have the following meanings:

Display Icon	Meaning when pressed
→→	Last number redial key: Open the list of the last 10 numbers you dialled.
OK	OK key: confirm menu function or confirm an input and store.
☰	Menu key: Activates the main menu when in standby. Open a status-dependent menu while making a call.
☰+	Menu+ key: Open submenu, e. g. in input fields
C	Delete key: Delete input from right to left one character at a time.
↩	Escape key: Go back one menu level, or cancel the operation.
EMail	Open email directory.

Correcting wrong inputs

After a correct input you will hear a confirmation tone (rising tone sequence). An incorrect input is indicated by an error tone (descending tone sequence). You can repeat the input.

If you have entered the wrong character **in the text**, you can correct it as follows:

Deleting characters to the left of the cursor with C clear

To correct a phone number or text, move the cursor to the right of the incorrect character with the control key. Then press the display key C. The character is deleted. Now enter the correct character.

Inserting characters to the right of the cursor

If you have left out a character, use the control key to move the cursor to where you want to insert the character, and then enter it.

Overwriting characters

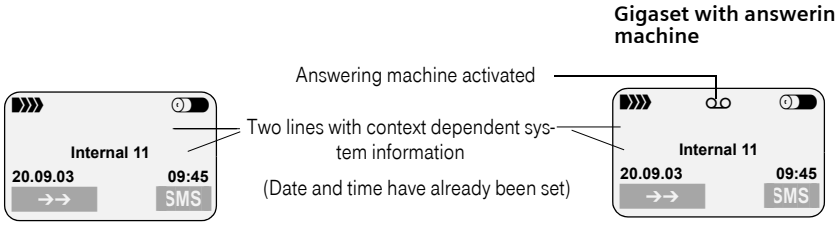
When entering **Date/Time** the number of digits is fixed and there is a default entry in the field. Use the control key to move the cursor to the wrong digit and overwrite it.

Overwriting characters to the right of the cursor

When entering **Cost per Unit:** the number of digits is fixed and there is a default entry in the field. Use the control key to move the cursor to the **left** of the wrong digit and then overwrite it.

Idle status

Display in idle status (example, Logo deactivated)



Reverting to idle status from anywhere in the menu:

- Hold down call end key for approx. 1 sec. or
- Press no key: The display **automatically** reverts to the idle status after 1 minute.

Changes which you have not confirmed or saved by pressing OK, Yes, Save, Send or with **Store** OK will be lost.

Menu operation, with "Setting Handsfree Volume" as an example

1. Press right side of the control key. The menu opens.
2. Keep pressing the lower part of the control key until you see **Audio Settings** marked in the display (by the frame).
3. OK — Use the right side of the control key or the display key OK to confirm.
4. OK — Confirm the first display entry, **Handset Volume**, using the right side of the control key or with the display key OK to confirm.
5. Press the left or right side of the control key to select the volume (1–5).
6. Save — Now press the display key to confirm the setting.
7. Press and **hold** the "end call" key to return to the idle status.

Operating the base – Getting started wizard

A few settings are necessary before using your telephone. The Getting started wizard is designed to help you with this. It can be opened anytime using your handset. The following settings can be set one after the other.

- Date and time
- Hide/show answering machine 1... 3 (on Gigaset with integrated answering machine)
- Find out/enter the MSN of your connection
- Set the device type for the connected device
- Set the incoming MSN
- Set the outgoing MSN
- Outside line code (when using a PABX)

What is an MSN?

MSN = Multiple Subscriber Number. You can apply for up to ten different telephone numbers for one multiple ISDN connection. An MSN is one of the phone numbers assigned to you **without an area code**.

You telephone uses the MSN entirely as you require. The following differentiation is made:

- **Receive MSN:** Phone numbers you may be called on. You can assign the receive MSN's to specific internal users (terminals)(page 112). Incoming calls are only forwarded to the terminals to which the relevant MSN has been assigned. Terminals are, for instance, handsets or answering machines.
- **Send MSN:** Phone numbers that are identified to the person you are calling. The network operator calculates charges based on the send MSN's. You can assign a fixed send MSN to each internal user (page 113).

Potential internal parties:

Depending on the scope of function of the base, you can assign internal phone numbers to the following internal users. The operating instructions for the base will indicate which internal phone numbers are available.

- **Handsets**
- Base station (CX203isdn, CX253isdn, SX303isdn, SX353isdn)
- Analogue devices (SX205isdn, SX255isdn, SX303isdn, SX353isdn)
- PC via a USB connection (SX205isdn, SX255isdn, SX303isdn, SX353isdn)
- Bluetooth devices (SX303isdn, SX353isdn)
- **Data modules**
- **Answering machine** integrated in the base

Example of how to assign an MSN:
You have applied for four MSN's, two for business use (MSN1, MSN2) and two for private purposes (MSN3, MSN4). Four handsets are connected to a base. Two handsets (Int.11 and 12) and the answering machine AM 91 are intended for business use, and two handsets (Int.13 and 14) and the answering machine AM 92 are intended for private use.

Internal users		Use	Receive MSN	Send MSN
Handsets	Int.11 , 12	Business	MSN1, MSN2	MSN1
Answering machine	AM 91		MSN1, MSN2	---
Handset	Int.13	Private	MSN3	MSN3
Handset	Int.14		MSN4	MSN4
Answering machine	AM 92		MSN3, MSN4	---

The following applies to Comfort handsets S1, SL1:
Because internal 11 and internal 12 handsets are assigned two (receiving) MSNs each, they can use the **MSN next call** performance feature (page 113). They can change to (sending) MSN2 during each outgoing external call. The internal 13 and 14 handsets cannot do this.

Launching the Getting started wizard and setting the basic settings

Launching the Getting started wizard:

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Installation OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
YES	Press the display key to launch the Getting started wizard. If you already have set a system PIN (not 0000) (page 91), you will be asked to enter it.
OK	If required, enter the system PIN and confirm.

i	◆ The Getting started wizard cannot be used simultaneously by multiple handsets. ◆ If there is already settings data (factory default or previous settings), this data is shown at the appropriate positions in the display and can be modified there. ◆ To cancel the Getting started wizard, press the end call key and hold. All changes you have already saved using **Save entry** OK are retained. The handset returns to idle status. ◆ To skip a setting, press the display key NO.

Setting the date and time:
Depending on the network provider, the date and time are adopted automatically from the telephone network during the first outgoing call.
The display shows: **Enter time?**

YES	Press the display key to set the date and time.
	Enter the date (6-digit) and time (4-digit in 24-hour mode) in series, e.g. 200903 0945 for 9/29/03 9:45 a.m..
>☰+	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

If the time should be displayed in 12-hour mode, you can modify the setting later (page 94).

Hiding/showing answering machine

On the base:	SX150isdn	CX253isdn	SX255isdn	SX353isdn

The following answering machines AM1, AM2, and AM3 are available. You can use the answering machine when it is shown. By factory default, only AM1 is shown (only AM1 is displayed in the menus).
The display shows: **Suppress display of AM1?**
Respond with

- YES, if you want to hide AM1,
- with NO, if you want to use AM1.

This sequence will then be repeated for AM2 and AM3.

i	An answering machine can only be hidden if there are no messages/ memos stored in it (page 82).

Finding your phone numbers (MSN):
This function must be supported by your network provider.
The display shows: **Find own numbers (MSN)?**
Several phone numbers (MSN) were provided by the network provider when you received your ISDN connection confirmation. You can store up to 10 phone numbers. If an MSN has not been entered on your telephone, you can retrieve the phone numbers from the telephone exchange.

Confirm the prompt with YES.

- If your MSNs can be found, the number of MSNs found will be shown on the display and the MSNs entered.
- If your MSNs cannot be found (e.g., because MSNs are already entered or the network provider does not support this function), a message about this will be displayed. You must enter the MSNs manually (see next section).

Entering your phone numbers (MSNs) manually and entering names for the MSNs:
The display shows: **Find own numbers (MSN)?**

YES	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
YES	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
	Enter name. Entering a name for an MSN is optional.
	If necessary, scroll to the line **<Number>** and enter the MSN. If the MSNs were found automatically, the numbers will already be entered.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

The MSNs entered will automatically be assigned to all registered handsets as incoming and outgoing MSNs.
This sequence will then be repeated for MSN2 to MSN10.

Setting the device type:

On the base:	SX205isdn	SX255isdn	SX303isdn	SX353isdn

If your base offers the option of connecting an analogue terminal, you must set the device type (see operating instructions for the base).
The display shows: Setting the device type?
If you have connected an analogue device to your base, select YES.
The display shows: **Set device type for internal 21?**, select YES.
Select the applicable entry and confirm with OK (✓ = on). The operating instructions for the base will indicate which settings are possible.
Briefly press the menu exit key ⓒ to continue.

Setting the incoming MSN

The display shows: **Set incoming MSN?**

The incoming MSN is used to answer incoming calls. The MSNs allocated to your ISDN connection can be allocated to various terminals according to your preferences. You can assign a terminal multiple incoming MSNs.

YES	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
YES	Press the display key to confirm the **Set allocation Internal 11 ?** prompt. The list of entered MSNs is displayed.
MSN 1:12345678 OK	Select the MSN which should be assigned to this terminal, and confirm. Repeat this sequence for all MSNs which should be assigned to this terminal as an incoming MSN.
	Press the display key to end this assignment for this terminal.

This sequence will be repeated for all handsets registered for your telephone and for the integrated answering machine (on Gigaset with integrated answering machine).

i	When setting the incoming MSN for an answering machine, only the MSNs are offered in the MSN list which have not yet been assigned to another answering machine.

Setting the outgoing MSN:

The display shows: **Set outgoing MSN?**

Each internal party can be assigned exactly one of the available outgoing MSNs. It is identified to the person called and the network provider bills the call charges to this MSN. You can assign an MSN as an outgoing MSN to multiple terminals, but each terminal is only assigned one outgoing MSN.

YES	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
YES	Press the display key to confirm the **Set allocation Internal 11?** prompt. The list of entered MSNs is displayed.
MSN 1:12345678 OK	Select the MSN which should be assigned to this terminal, and confirm.
	Press the display key to end this assignment for this terminal.

This sequence will be repeated for all handsets registered for your telephone.

Using with a PABX:
Only carry out the following steps if you want to connect your telephone to a private PABX (thus not directly to a NTBA). In this case, you must enter an access code (outside line code) for external calls when getting started the first time, depending on the PABX. See the operating instructions for your PABX. You can enter a one to four-digit access code.

The display shows: **Operate behind PABX?**

YES	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
YES	Press the display key to confirm the prompt **Set access code?**.
	Enter the access code (outside line code).
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The Getting started wizard is closed.

The display shows **Installation completed**. Press the end call key , to return to the idle status of the handset.

Registering/de-registering handsets

On a few bases, the registration of your Gigaset S1 handset is done automatically. You can also register your Gigaset S1 handset manually. You must register your Gigaset SL1 handset **manually**.

Your handset can be registered on up to four bases.

Automatic registration: Gigaset S1 handset

On the base:	CX100isdn	CX150isdn	SX100isdn	SX150isdn

To register for the first time, place the **deactivated** handset in the base with the **display facing upwards**. Registration takes around 1 minute. The handset **automatically** receives the lowest free internal number from the range **Int.11** to **Int.16**. This will appear in the display after registration is complete.

If all internal numbers on your phone have already been assigned for wireless terminals, please de-register another handset you no longer require before registering a new one (page 21).

Manual registration: Gigaset S1 and SL1

If all internal numbers on your phone have already been assigned for wireless terminals, please de-register another handset you no longer require before registering a new one (page 21).

You must initiate handset registration on the handset and on the base.

1. Prepare the base for registration (see operating instructions for the base).

2. On the handset (within 30 sec.)

	Open the menu.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Register H/Set OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Base 1 OK	Select base (1–4) and confirm, e.g. **Base 1**.
OK	Enter the system PIN of the base (the default is 0000) and confirm. **Regstr.Procedure** appears in the display along with the name of the base e.g. **Base 1**. Once the handset has located the base, the list of free internal numbers is shown in the display.
Int.11 OK	Select internal number and confirm, e.g. **Int.11** .

After registration the handset reverts to idle status. The handset's internal number is shown in the display.

i	The handset interrupts the base search after 60 seconds. If registration has not been completed within this time, repeat the procedure.

De-registering handsets

You can de-register any registered handset from any registered Gigaset S1 or SL1 handset.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
De-reg. device OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Int.18 OK	Select the handset that you wish to de-register and confirm, e.g. **Int.18**.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Changing the base

The following settings may be made if your handset is registered with more than one base:

- Set to one specific base, e.g. the base at home or the base at the office.
- Set to the base with the best reception: **Best Base**. This setting will automatically select whichever base has the best reception.

	Open the menu.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Select Base OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select one of the registered bases or **Best Base** and confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Making calls

Making external calls and ending a call

External calls are calls using the public telephone network. Two external calls can be made at the same time on your base.

	Enter the phone number and press the talk key. The phone number is dialled.
	End the call:
	Press end call key.

i	◆ You can also **press** the talk key first (you hear the dialling tone) and then enter the number. ◆ You can use the end call key to cancel the dialling operation. ◆ You can also end a conversation by placing the handset in the base.

Making internal calls

Internal calls are calls between different handsets that are registered with the same base. They are toll-free. Three internal calls can be made at the same time on your base.

You can either call a specific handset or call all the internal users at the same time ("group call").

i	If you receive a call during an internal call or group call, the call is not interrupted. You will hear a call waiting tone.

Calling a specific handset

	Open **Internal call**.
either ...	
	Enter the number of the internal party you want.
or ...	
LIST	Press the display key.
Int.11 OK	Select internal number and confirm, e.g. **Int.11** .

Starting a group call to all internal users

You can make a group call from any handset to all other registered internal parties entered for group calls (page 120). By factory default, this option is activated.

	Open **Internal call**.
either ...	
LIST	Press the display key.
Collective call OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	
	Press the star key.

The first internal user to pick up the call is connected with you.

Accepting a call

Your handset rings, the call is displayed on the screen and the handsfree key flashes. Press the talk key or the handsfree key to accept the call. If the handset is in the base/charger and the **Auto Answer** function is activated (page 102), then you just need to lift the handset out of the base/charger to take the call.

Withholding Calling Line Identification

Precondition: The "Withhold Calling Line Identification" service is supported by your network provider.

When supplied, your phone number is displayed on the phone of the person you are calling (CLIP – for outgoing connections) and a caller's phone number is displayed on your handset (COLP – for incoming connections).

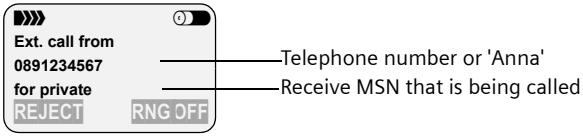
You can withhold this Calling Line Identification (CLIR – for outgoing connections, COLR – for incoming connections). CLIP/CLIR are paired with COLP/COLR: if you withhold Calling Line Identification both – CLIR and COLR – are activated.

CLIP	Calling Line Identification Presentation = display of phone number for outgoing connections
CLIR	Calling Line Identity Restriction = suppress the display of the phone number for outgoing connections
COLP	Connected Line Identity Presentation = display of phone number for incoming connections
COLR	Connected Line Identity Restriction = suppress the display of the phone number for incoming connections

Displaying caller's phone number

Precondition: Calling Line Identification is activated for the caller.

Screen display with CLIP
With Calling Line Identification, the caller's telephone number is displayed on the handset screen. If you have stored an entry for this number in your directory, then that entry will be displayed instead of the number, e.g. "Anna".



Unavailable is displayed on the screen if the caller's phone number is not identified.

Withholding phone number identification

If you do not wish your phone number to be revealed to the person you are speaking to You can withhold identification of your phone number specifically for the next call or else for all calls. If set for all calls, the phone number is withheld both for outgoing calls (CLIR) and for incoming calls (COLR).

Withholding transfer of the phone number only for the next call:

			Open the menu.
	Base Settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Call preparat.	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Temp.withhold	OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).
			Hold down (return to idle status).

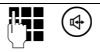
i	After the call, the setting is reset again. Your phone number will be identified to your next caller. When you call the selected phone number from the last number redial list again, this call is also not anonymous.

Withholding or permitting identification of your phone number for all calls:
By factory default, **Withhold no.** is not activated.

			Open the menu.
	Base Settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	ISDN settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Withhold no.	OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).
			Hold down (return to idle status).

Handsfree

Activating/deactivating handsfree

	Activate while dialling:
	Enter the phone number and press the handsfree key (instead of the talk key).
	Activate during a call:
	Press the handsfree key.
	Deactivate handsfree:
	Press the talk key.

As soon as you terminate the handsfree mode you switch to "earpiece mode" and continue the call on the handset.

i	If you wish to place the handset in the base during a call you must press the handsfree key and hold it down while you position the handset in the base.

Adjusting the volume while in handsfree mode

A call is in progress and handsfree is activated.

	Press the handsfree key **again**.
	Decrease or increase the volume.
Save	Press the display key to save the setting.

Picking up a call during ring delay (Call PickUp)

You can pick up a call despite any set ring delay (page 121).

Preconditions:

- The party picking up must be authorised with at least **Incoming only** status (page 92).
- Both parties must be assigned the same incoming MSN (page 112).

	Press the talk key. **Annehmen?** is shown.
YES	Confirm to pick up the call.

Rejecting a call

You get an external call or you are making a call and receive an external call. The call is signalled acoustically as well as is shown in the display on all handsets of this MSN group. You can reject this external call.

Press the display key REJECT.

Depending on the setting (page 115) the call is only **rejected** on the handset rejecting the call (handsets with the same incoming MSN continue to ring) or is rejected for the entire MSN group (the caller hears the busy tone).

Reserving a line

Your ISDN connection offers you 2 simultaneously usable telephone lines (B channels).

Precondition: You want to make calls externally, but both telephone lines of your connection are busy (used by other internal parties).

Press the display key CALLBCK. The next available free line will be reserved for you.

You handset rings as soon as an external line is free.

either ...	**Use a free line:**
	Press the talk key. You can now enter the phone number as usual.
or ...	**Delete the reservation:**
DELETE	Press the display key. The reservation is cancelled.

i	If the reservation is neither accepted or deleted, it will be deleted automatically after 30 sec.

Defining the outgoing MSN for the next call

Even if you have defined an individual outgoing MSN for the handset (page 112), you can select another MSN as outgoing MSN before each call, e.g. for individual recording of charges.

Make sure that the outgoing/incoming MSN corresponds to the phone number registered at your SMS centre (page 54).

By factory default, **MSN next call** is not activated for an MSN.

			Open the menu.
	Base Settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Call preparat.	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	MSN next call	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	MSN	OK	Select the MSN and confirm (✓ = activated). The next call uses this MSN.
			Hold down (return to idle status).

i	The temporary outgoing MSN is transferred to the person called as phone number information.

You can set up your handset so that after pressing the Talk key ✆ or the handsfree key ◁) a list of all available outgoing MSNs is displayed (page 113).

Ringback when busy (CCBS) / when the call is not answered (CCNR)

Precondition: The exchange supports this service.

Ringback when busy – CCBS (Completion of calls to busy subscriber)
The user you are calling is currently making a call. Automatic callback saves you making repeated attempts to dial the number.

Callback when the call is not answered – CCNR (Completion of calls no reply)
If the user you are calling does not answer you can arrange automatic callback. As soon as the user has finished a call and the line is free again you will be rung back. The call-back request is automatically cancelled after about 2 hours (depending on the exchange).

Activating callback

The number you are calling is busy or your call is not answered:

CALLBCK	Press the display key.
	Wait for confirmation from the exchange.

Accepting a callback

The handset rings with a special ring and the display shows the ringback number.

✆	Press the talk key. The connection is established.

Checking and deleting a ringback

Deleting the ringback while it is incoming:
The handset rings and the display shows the ringback number.

DELETE	Press the display key. The callback function is cancelled.

Checking or deleting the ringback before it is incoming:

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Status OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The status list is displayed (✓ = activated).
Callback OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The current callback number is shown on the screen.
either ...	**Check:**
BACK	Press the display key. The ringback remains active.
or ...	**Cancel:**
DELETE	Press the display key. The callback function is cancelled.

Identify caller

Identify caller is used to identify annoying or threatening callers.

Precondition: You have applied for Identify caller with your network provider.

Activate this function during the call or immediately after the caller has hung up. You must not end the call yourself.

i	You must not press the end call key!

	Open the menu.
Identify caller OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

The caller is identified in the telephone exchange and is recorded by phone number, time and date. A printout of the list is sent later by your network provider.

Functions during a call

Muting the handset

You can mute your handset during a call, e.g. if you wish to talk confidentially to another person in the room. Your party on the line cannot hear your conversation during this time. But you can continue to hear him/her.

MUTE	Press the display key. The call is "held".
	To cancel muting:
AUDIBLE	Press the display key.

i	When redialling or when performing other functions such as an internal enquiry call, the muting is cancelled.

Making a call to several users

You initiate a call to several users either one at a time ("toggling", page 31) or at the same time ("conference call", page 32).

External enquiry call

You wish to call another external user during an external or internal call.

i	The enquiry call from an external call to another external call can be set so (page 122) that both ISDN lines are occupied (hold connection internally), or so that your second ISDN line remains free (hold connection externally – HOLD).

Initiate enquiry call:

either ...	
	Open the menu.
Enquiry call OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	
R	Press the recall key.

The call to the first user is now put on hold. If the connection is on hold internally (page 122), the first party hears the set waiting melody (page 123).

Make a call to the second external user:

	Enter the second user's telephone number. You can also make a call via the directory or other lists (page 36).
	If the second external user you have dialled is busy:
BACK	Press the display key to return to the first party.
	If the second external user rings:
either ...	**Toggle (page 31):**
	Swap between callers.
or ...	**Conference call (page 32):**
CONF.	Press the display key to establish conference switching.
or ...	
	Transfer the call (page 33).

Internal enquiry call

You wish to call an internal user during an external call.

Initiate enquiry call:

either ...	
	Open Internal call
or ...	
CONSULT	Press the display key.
	Open Internal call.
or ...	
	Press the recall key.
	Open Internal call.

The call to the first user is now put on hold. The first (external) party hears the set up waiting melody (page 123), when the connection is on hold internally (page 122).

Make a call to the internal user:

either ...	
	Enter the number of the internal party you want.
or ...	
LIST	Press the display key.
Int.11 OK	Select internal number, e.g. **Int.11** and confirm. The connection to the internal party is established.
	The internal party dialled is busy:
BACK	Press the display key to return to the external party.
	The internal party has answered:
either ...	**Toggle (page 31):**
	Swap between callers.
or ...	**Conference call (page 32):**
CONF.	Press the display key to establish conference switching.
or ...	
	Transfer the call (page 33).

Toggling

Precondition: You have established an enquiry call (page 29 and page 30).

There is both an active call (the one established with an enquiry call) and a held call (the first). You can speak to both callers one at a time.

Use to swap between the two callers.

An external party hears the set-up waiting melody in a connection on hold (page 123) when the connection is on hold internally (page 122). An internal party in a connection on hold does not hear a waiting melody.

Ending an enquiry call/toggling:

either ...	**End the call that is currently active:**
	Open the menu.
End OK	Select the menu item and confirm. You return to the waiting caller.
or ...	
	Press end call key. The active connection is ended. You will automatically be called again by the person on hold.

Conference call

Precondition: You have established an enquiry call (page 29 and page 30).

There is both an active call (the one established with an enquiry call) and a held call (the first). In a conference call you can speak to both other callers at the same time.

i	You can make a conference call with ◆ two external users or ◆ with one internal user and one external user.

It is possible to conduct two conference calls at the same time on one base.

Establishing a conference

You are making an enquiry call. The first caller is put on hold.

Press the display key CONF. to establish conference switching.

Ending a conference

You have several options for ending a conference call:

either ...	**You end the conference:**
	Hold down (return to idle status).
or ...	**You change the conference to an enquiry call:**
INDIV.	Press the display key to change the conference switching to an enquiry call (page 29 or page 30). The connection that was active immediately before the conference was established becomes the active call again.

Forwarding an incoming call – CD (Call Deflection)

CD enables an incoming call to be forwarded to any phone number while it is ringing, without having to answer the call.

You can pre-set a forwarding destination (page 119), dial a phone number from the directory or enter a new number.

	Open the menu.
Forward OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The pre-set forwarding destination is dialled.

Transferring calls

Transferring a call to an external number – ECT (Explicit Call Transfer)

Preconditions:

- The service is supported by your network provider.
- It is only possible to transfer a call if the exchange also supports ECT. If this is not the case, then the external call is disconnected. The number cannot be called back.
- To "hold" when making an enquiry call from an external call, **Ext. enq. call** must be set (page 122).

You are making an external call and would like to transfer it to another external user. Establish an external enquiry call (page 29) and press the end call key ☎ (also before notifying), to transfer the call.

i	With some ISDN PABX systems, your two parties are not connected together when you press the end call key during a transfer. In this case you need to activate this function, see page 122.

Transferring a call to another handset

You are making an **external** call and would like to transfer it to another handset.

Establish an internal enquiry call (page 30) and press the end call key ☎ (also before notifying), to transfer the call.

Working with call waiting for an external call – CW (Call Waiting)

Precondition: CW (Call Waiting) set up, see page 122.

You hear the call waiting tone (short beep) if you receive an external call while conducting another call (internal or external). The caller's number or name will appear in the display if Calling Line Identification is enabled.

There are four ways to work with call waiting for an external call:

Accept the waiting call – enquiry call:

Press the display key ACCEPT. You answer the call waiting call, and the first call is put on hold. Both parties are shown on the display, the current one is marked.
To toggle between both callers see page 31, for a conference call see page 32.

Reject the waiting call

Press the display key REJECT to reject a call on call waiting.

i	If you reject the call waiting tone on your handset, it can still be heard on other registered handsets.

Changing parties

	End your current call. The waiting call becomes a normal call.
	Press the talk key to answer the call.

Forward call waiting internally:
You can forward the call waiting call internally without answering the call.

	Open the menu.
Forward OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Int.11 OK	Select internal number and confirm, e.g. **Int.11** .
either ...	The call waiting tone ceases. The call on call waiting was successfully forwarded.
	Continue the active call.
or ...	You continue to hear the call waiting tone. The call on call waiting could not be forwarded.

i	Forwarding is only possible to internal parties who are not already being called.

Putting a call on hold (Call Hold)

Putting an external caller on hold:
You are conducting an external call.
Press the display key INT. The external caller is put on hold. The waiting external party hears the waiting melody (page 123), when the connection is on hold internally (page 122). You can initiate an internal enquiry call (page 30).

Putting an internal caller on hold:
You are conducting an internal call.
Press the display key CONSULT. The internal party is on hold.

Parking/continuing a call

You are making an external call and would like to transfer this to another telephone of your ISDN connection, for example.

	Open the menu.
Call park OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter a one or two digit park number and confirm. Wait for the positive response **Call parked**.
	Hold down (return to idle status).

"De-parking" a call before talking:

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Call preparat. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Canc. call park OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter previously assigned park number and confirm.
	Press the talk key.

"De-parking" a call after talking:

	Press the talk key.
	Open the menu.
Canc. call park OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter previously assigned park number and confirm.

Using the directory and other lists

Directory and speed dial list

You can store up to 200 numbers in the directory and the email directory.

You can store up to 10 phone numbers in the speed dial list.

The **directory** makes dialling easier for you. You open the directory in idle status using the ⌂ key. You can store an anniversary/birthday for every directory entry and mark the entry as "VIP".

The **speed dial list** is a special directory in which you can store particularly important numbers such as private telephone numbers and prefixes of network providers (so-called "call-by-call numbers"), etc.. You open the speed dial list with the ⌂ key.

You create the directory, email directory, and speed dial list for your individual handset. You can send the lists/individual entries to the other handsets if you want them to be available at other handsets as well (page 42).

The speed dial list is operated in just the same way as the directory, except for the way in which entries are stored.

i	◆ The **EATONI** predictive text helps you input names (page 155, this feature is deactivated when you purchase your phone). ◆ Please refer to the **Character Set Chart** (page 154) to see how to enter text. ◆ You can enter up to 32 digits for a number and up to 16 letters for a name. ◆ When entering a number you can insert the required pause with ☰, ⌂ **Insert Pause** OK or by pressing ® for about 2 seconds.

Storing a telephone number in the directory

	Open the directory.
New Entry OK	Confirm.
	Create an entry:
	Enter the telephone number.
	Scroll to the next line and enter the name.
either ...	**Save the entry:**
	Press display key to open menu.
Store OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
or ...	**Before saving, enter the anniversary:**
	Scroll to the **Annivers.:** line to enter the anniversary if necessary, as is described on page 42. **Now:**
Save	Press the display key to save the setting.
... then	
	Long press (back to idle status).

Storing a telephone number in the speed dial list

You can assign one of the digits 0, 2–9 to **up to nine** entries on your speed dial list. Already assigned digits are no longer offered. When you press and hold one of these digits with the handset in the idle status, then press the Talk key, the phone number assigned to that digit is dialled immediately.

The maximum number of entries in the speed dial list is dependent on the number of entries in the directory and in the email address directory.

	Open the speed dial list.
New Entry OK	Confirm.
	Create an entry:
	Enter the telephone number.
	Scroll to the line **PublicKey:** and enter the name.
either ...	**Store a phone number:**
	Press display key to open menu.
Save Entry OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
or ...	**Store a speed dial digit:**
	Scroll to the **Enter key:** line and select a digit (0, 2–9) for this phone number.
Save	Press the display key to save the setting.
... then	
	Long press (back to idle status).

i	◆ Already assigned speed dial digits are no longer offered. ◆ Sorting order: entries with speed dial digits are at the beginning of the list.

Dialling with the directory/speed dial list

	Open the directory or speed dial list.
either ...	**Scroll to the entry:**
	Select entry.
	Press the talk key. The number is dialled.
or ...	**Enter the first letter:**
	Enter the first letter of the name you want, such as "N".
	You can also enter the next few letters. In line **directly over the display keys** (input field) is an "N". Enter the 2nd letter, e.g., "i". The name having this letter combination comes next and appears. In the input field is now "Ni". Enter letters (max. 10) until the name you are looking for appears.
	Press the talk key. The number is dialled.

Defining the MSN for the next call:
You can select a valid outgoing MSN only for this call even when dialling from the directory. **Precondition: MSN next call** must be activated (page 113). Select an entry and open with the submenu. Using **Dial number** OK the list of MSNs is displayed.

Viewing and editing an entry in the directory/speed dial list

	Open the directory or speed dial list.
View	Select the entry and press the display key.
Edit	Press the display key to initiate changes.

Proceed as described on page 37 (directory) or page 37 (speed dial list) under "Create entry".

Copying and changing a directory entry

So that you do not have to enter a similar entry twice, you can create a copy and then edit that entry.

	Open the directory.
	Select an entry and open the menu.
Copy and Edit OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Change the phone number.
	Scroll to the next line and change the name.
either ...	**Save the changes:**
	Press display key to open menu.
Store OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
or ...	**Before saving, change the anniversary:**
Edit	Jump to the line **Annivers.:** and press the display key.
OK	Change the anniversary (page 42) and confirm.
Save	Press the display key to save the entry.
... then	
Yes	If you do not change the phone number, you will see a message telling you that the phone number already exists. Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
	Press key (return to idle status).

i	Voice pattern and VIP settings are not copied.

Marking a directory entry as VIP

You can mark directory entries of callers who are particularly important to you as "VIP" (Very Important Person). You can also assign a particular ringer melody to VIP numbers. You can then tell who is calling you by the ringer. The VIP melody sounds **after** the first ring tone.

Precondition: The phone number of the caller is transferred (page 23).

	Open the directory.
	Select an entry and open the menu.
VIP Entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	In the **VIP:** line, activate the function.
	Move one line down. The current melody rings, their digit is at the end of the line. Select a melody (1-10).
Save	Now press the display key to confirm the setting.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Deleting a single entry or directory/speed dial list

	Open the directory or speed dial list.
	Select an entry and open the menu.
either ...	**Delete a single entry:**
Delete Entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Delete the entire directory/speed dial list:**
Delete Calls List OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Yes	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Adding a displayed telephone number to the directory

When a telephone number appears in the display (CLIP) you can add it to your directory. This can be done while dialling from the last number redial list, from the calls list/ answering machine list (on Gigaset with integrated answering machine) or during a call .

	Open the menu.
Copy to Directory OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	If you do not have a CNIP, scroll to the name line and enter the name.
either ...	Save the entry:
	Press display key to open menu.
Save Entry OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
or ...	**Enter the anniversary:**
	Scroll to the **Annivers.:** line to enter the anniversary if necessary, as is described on page 42. **Now:**
Save	Press the display key to save the entry.

i	If you have CNIP (page 23) as well as CLIP, then the name that goes with the telephone number will also be displayed (up to 16 characters long).

Selecting a phone number from the directory

If you are prompted to enter an external phone number while you are operating your telephone, you can use the directory of your handset to do this.

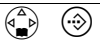
Precondition: The input field for external telephone numbers is displayed.

either ...	
	Press display key to open menu.
Directory OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select entry and confirm.
or ...	
	Open the directory.
OK	Select entry and confirm.

The phone number of the entry is added to the entry field.

Sending a single entry or complete list to a handset

You can send single entries or the complete list to another handset that is registered on the same base. This avoids entering information twice. VIP settings, stored voice patterns and speed dial digits are not sent.

	Open the directory or speed dial list.
	Select an entry and open the menu.
either ...	**Send a single entry:**
Copy Entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Send complete list:**
Copy List OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
... then	
OK	Enter the internal number of the receiving handset and confirm. Sending is initiated.

After an entry has been sent you are asked if you want to send another entry. If you confirm with the display key Yes you can select more entries to send; once you have finished sending, press the display key No to end it.

The successful transfer of data is confirmed with a message and with the confirmation tone at the receiving handset. Existing entries in the receiving handset are retained.

Entries with identical numbers are not overwritten. The number of entries that are stored in the receiving handset may therefore differ from the number of entries that you have sent to it.

The transfer is cancelled if the phone rings or if the memory of the receiving handset is full. The last entry to be transferred appears in the display.

Saving an anniversary to a phone number

You can save anniversaries, such as a birthday in the directory and be reminded of this (reminder call). So that the anniversary can be signalled with a ringer melody, you must enter a time.

Precondition: You have opened a directory entry (page 37).

Edit	Jump to the line **Annivers.:** and press the display key.
	In the **Date:** line, enter the day/month (4-digit).
	Scroll to the **Time:** line and enter the hour/minute (4-digit) when the signalling (reminder) should take place.
	Scroll to the **Prompt:** line and select a signal (melody 1–10 or "visual").
OK	Confirm. The directory entry is displayed again. Now save the entry as described on page 37.

To delete an anniversary, press the display key Edit in the **field for the anniversary** in the directory entry, then when the display changes press the display key Delete and finally after another display change press Save.

Anniversary reminder call:
The handset signals a reminder call with the selected ringer melody. The display shows the directory entry with .

either ...	**Switch off the reminder call ahead of time:**
Silence	Press the display key.
or ...	**Answer with an SMS:**
SMS	Press the display key. You are immediately in the SMS menu.

Voice-activated dialling

With voice-activated dialling, you can dial a phone number by simply speaking the name of the party in your handset you wish to call. First you have to create a directory entry and say the name one time for this entry, i.e., a voice pattern of the name must be stored in your handset.

The voice patterns are saved in voice directories. You can create up to four different, user-specific voice directories. By factory default they are called user 1 to user 4. Each user must record his own voice pattern and store it in his voice directory.

The voice directory contains all directory entries. Entries which already have a voice pattern saved for the set user are marked with a .

You can save up to 29 voice patterns, distributed among users.

Recording a voice pattern for an existing directory entry

Record your voice pattern in quiet surroundings..

	Step 1: Open the directory for voice-activated dialling:
	Open the directory.
Voice	Select the entry and press the display key.
User 2 OK	Select and confirm, e.g. **User 2**.
	Step 2: Begin recording:
record.	Press the display key.
OK	Confirm the display prompt. Speak the name when prompted to do so by the display. Repeat the **name** when prompted again to do so. Your recording is stored automatically.
	Long press (back to idle status).

To **change** the voice pattern, you must delete it (page 45) and record it again.

i	◆ If your two recordings are **too different from each other**, you will be prompted to repeat them. ◆ A message tells you if your speech pattern is **too much like** another user's. Close this message with , go back to the start of the voice pattern recording sequence and repeat the recording.

Using voice-activated dialling :

	Hold down.

The display prompts you to speak. Speak the voice pattern, e.g. **Anna**. If the name matches the recorded voice pattern, it is repeated. The phone number is dialled.

Announcing the caller's name

When you receive an external call, you hear the ringer and the telephone announces the caller's name.

Precondition: Calling Line Identification is active (page 23) and you have recorded a voice pattern for the incoming number (page 43).

Activating/deactivating the name announcement

	Open the menu.
Audio Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Ringer Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Ext. Calls OK	Confirm. You hear the current volume.
	Scroll to the **Announce** line and activate/deactivate the name announcement.
Save	Now press the display key to confirm the setting.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Play the voice pattern

Open the directory for voice-activated dialling (see **Step 1**, page 43). **Now:**

	Select the marked entry with .
Play	Press the display key.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Deleting the voice pattern

You can delete a particular user's voice pattern for an entry. This does not affect the voice patterns of the other users.

Open the directory for voice-activated dialling (see **Step 1**, page 43). **Now:**

	Select an entry (marked with) and open the menu.
Delete Name OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The entry is displayed without .
	Long press (back to idle status).

i	Deleting a voice pattern for an entry does not affect its number or name – they are retained. The voice patterns of other users for the same entry are also unaffected.

Changing a user name

You can change the user names (**User 1** to **User 4**).

	Open the directory.
Voice	Select an entry and press the display key.
User 2 OK	Select the user and confirm, e.g. **User 2**.
Edit	Press the display key to initiate changes.
Save	Enter the new name and save.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Email directory

You store email addresses in the email directory you need for sending SMS to email addresses, for example. You can store a total of 200 entries in the e-mail directory, in the directory and in the speed dial list.

Saving a new email address

	Step 1: Open the email directory:
	Open the directory.
Deleting OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Step 2: Create an entry:
New Entry OK	Confirm.
	Enter the address (for text input see page 154).
	During entry ...
	Press display key to open menu.
either ...	**Insert a period:**
Insert '.' OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Insert an @:**
Insert '@' OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Activate/deactivate predictive text (page 155):**
Predictive Text OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
... then	Save email address:
	Press display key to open menu.
Save Entry OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Viewing and changing an email address

Precondition: You have opened an email directory (step1, page 46).

View	Select the entry and press the display key. The number is displayed.
	Changing an entry:
Edit	Press the display key.
	Edit the address.
	Press display key to open menu.
Save Entry OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Deleting or copying an email address

Precondition: You have opened an email directory.

	Select an entry and open the menu.
either ...	**Delete the email address:**
Delete Entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Copy the email address:**
Copy and Edit OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Change the address as required.
	Press display key to open menu.
Save Entry OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
... then	
	Long press (back to idle status).

Deleting the entire email directory

Precondition: You have opened an email directory.

	Select any entry and open the menu.
Delete List OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Display available memory

The memory space is divided up between the directory, the speed dial list (page 36) and the email directory (page 46). The available memory of all these lists is displayed.

	Open the directory.
	Select any entry and open the menu.
Available Memory OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Last number redial list

The last number redial list contains the ten last dialled numbers (on your handset). If names have also been stored for these numbers in the directory, then these names will be displayed. If there are several identical entries only the most recent will be displayed. If the last number redial list is full, the oldest entry is deleted with the next call. You can use the last number redial list to redial the telephone numbers.

Manual last number redial

→→	Open the last number redial list.
	Select the entry and press the talk key. The phone number is dialled.

i	◆ To add or change the phone number, press ☰, **Display Number** OK. ◆ When displaying a name, you can have the respective phone number displayed by using the display key View. ◆ You can add the phone numbers to your directory from the last number redial list (page 41).

Defining the MSN for the next call:
You can select a valid outgoing MSN only for this call even when dialling from the last number redial list. **Precondition: MSN next call** must be activated (page 113). Select an entry and open with ☰ the submenu. Using **Dial number** OK the list of MSNs is displayed.

Automatic redial

With this function, the phone number of a party you have not reached will be dialled automatically every 20 seconds. The Handsfree key flashes and "open listening" is activated. If the party answers, press the talk key. "Open listening" remains activated. If the caller does not answer, ringing stops after about 30 seconds. The function switches itself off after twelve dialling attempts.

Preconditions:

- The party cannot be reached.
- To be able to use automatic redial from the last number redial list, **MSN next call** must be deactivated for the handset (page 113).

	Press end call key.
→→	Open the last number redial list. The party who could not be reached is selected.
	Open the menu.
Automatic Redial OK	Confirm.

To cancel automatic redial, press the display key CANCEL or any key.

i	A call in the meantime deactivates the automatic redial. You must activate it again afterwards.

Deleting a single phone number or the entire last number redial list

→→	Open the last number redial list.
◁▷ ◁▷	Select an entry and open the menu.
either ...	**Delete a single telephone number:**
◁▷ **Delete Entry** OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
⌀	**Long** press (back to idle status).
or ...	**Delete the entire last number redial list:**
◁▷ **Delete Calls List** OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Opening lists with the message key

Providing a new entry is present in the relevant list, you can open the following lists using the message key ✉:

1. Incoming SMS message list **Textmessage(SMS)** (page 63)
2. List of missed calls **Missed calls** (page 50)
3. Answering machine lists **AM1** , **AM2** , **AM3** (on Gigaset with answering machine, page 141)

These lists display the calls, messages and text messages belonging to the receive MSN's assigned to the handset.

As soon as a **new entry** (calls, messages on an integrated answering machine and/or SMS) were received in one or more lists, the key ✉ **flashes** and an advisory tone is heard.

If the flashing key ✉ is pressed, the following is displayed:

- If only one list has new entries, you will see the first new entry in that list.
  Open entry: ◁▷ (Select entry) OK
- If several lists have new entries, those lists are offered for your selection.
  Open entry: ◁▷ (Select list) OK, ◁▷ (Select entry) OK

If the key ✉ is pressed, and it is not blinking, the following is displayed:
The message **No new messages** is displayed. Then the list of missed calls are opened.

Call lists

There are two call lists:

- the list of **missed** calls

  This contains all the calls that have not been accepted or have been rejected plus all calls responded to by an answering machine for which there is no message attached.
- the list of **accepted** calls

  This contains all the calls accepted by an internal user or answering machine.

The calls in these lists are displayed on a receive MSN assigned to the handset. In each case the phone numbers for the last 20 calls are stored. The oldest entry is deleted if a calls list is full and new entries are added. The most recent entry is at the top of the list and the oldest at the bottom.

A caller is entered in the relevant calls list at the end of a call. If a caller's number has been transferred and this phone number is entered in the directory, then the caller's name is inserted. If there are several identical entries only the most recent will be displayed in the two lists. A caller can appear in both lists if one call he makes is answered and another not. If an outgoing call is made to a caller who is entered in the list of missed calls, then this entry is transferred to the last number redial list and deleted from the list of missed calls.

The following is displayed for each entry:

- the number of calls for this caller
- the phone number of the caller or his name (if it exists as a directory entry) or **unknown**, if the phone number was not transferred
- the incoming MSN
- the date and time of the last call

Opening call lists

You can open both call lists via the menu. The list of missed calls can also be opened using the ✉-key, providing there is a new entry present (page 49). New entries in the list of missed calls are signalled by the ✉ key flashing and by a confirmation tone.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	
Accepted calls OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	
Missed calls OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

i	If another internal user has already opened a calls list you cannot open it.

Calling back a caller

Precondition: The caller's number has been identified (page 23).

Open the list of missed or accepted calls (page 51). **Now**:

	Select entry.
either ...	
	Press the talk key.
or ...	
	Open the menu.
Dial number OK	Confirm.
	Press the talk key.

Callback begins at once. The phone number is deleted from the calls list and entered in the last number redial list.

i	To a PABX: The access code (outside line code) is automatically put before the phone number (page 129).

Defining the MSN for the next call:

Even when dialling from the directory, you can

- put the area code of the network provider before the phone number (page 72).
  Select an entry and open with the submenu. Using **NET list** OK the network provider list is displayed.
- select a valid outgoing MSN only for this call. **Precondition: MSN next call** must be activated (page 113).
  Select an entry and open with the submenu. Using **Dial number** OK the list of MSNs is displayed.

Displaying an entry

Open the list of missed or accepted calls (page 50). **Now**:

	Select entry and open the submenu.
Display entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Changing the caller's phone number

Open the list of missed or accepted calls (page 50). **Now**:

	Select entry and open the submenu.
Change number OK	Select the menu item and confirm. You will now see the number.
	Change the number.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Delete entry OK	Confirm.

Adding an entry to the directory from the calls list

Open the list of missed or accepted calls (page 50). **Now**:

	Select entry and open the submenu.
Copy to dir. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Scroll to the line **Name** and enter the name (for text entry see page 154).
	Press display key to open menu.
Save Entry OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Deleting an entry from the calls list

Open the list of missed or accepted calls (page 50). **Now**:

either ...	**Delete a single entry:**
	Select entry and open the submenu.
Delete entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The entry is deleted.
or ...	**Delete all entries:**
	Open the submenu.
Delete list OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
YES	Confirm the prompt.
	Long press (back to idle status).

SMS (text messages)

You can send and receive SMS text messages (**S**hort **M**essage **S**ervice) with your handset. You can send an SMS to any fixed network or mobile phone network number. Your SMS can be received as a text message by any device with SMS functionality (mobile phone, PC, another telephone). If the recipient of your SMS does not have a phone with SMS functionality, then the SMS is played back.

You can write, edit, read, delete or forward SMS text messages from any registered handset that has SMS functionality and to which the same receive MSN has been assigned. When several handsets with the same receive MSN are in use at any one time, only **one handset** can access the SMS functions.

General

Text messages are exchanged between SMS centres that are operated by service providers. The telephone number of the SMS centres through which you wish to send and receive text messages must be entered in your phone (page 55). Up to ten SMS centres can be entered. You can change the telephone numbers of the SMS centres.

You can receive text messages via **any** of the SMS centres whose number you have entered. Of course you must be registered to receive text messages with those SMS centres (page 57).

Your text message is sent through the SMS centre that is entered as the **active** send service centre.

Before you can send and receive text messages

- Calling Line Identification may not be permanently deactivated for the MSN used (page 24).
- To receive text messages you must be registered with your service provider (page 57).
- The handset must have **Unrestricted** authorisation to send an SMS. To receive an SMS, **Incoming only** authorisation is adequate.
- You must not allow the network provider to bar the phone numbers you have entered for SMS centres.

It is currently not possible to send a text message if you have a call-by-call connection.

If the fixed line recipient's phone is unable to receive an SMS, the text message is played back automatically as a voice message. Between 7.00 and 22.00 hrs, these text messages are delivered immediately in the form of a telephone call. Text messages sent after 22.00 hrs are stored and delivered the next day.

If you have concluded a preselection contract with a network provider, ask whether they support the "Fixed network SMS" service. (Preselection means you are bound contractually to a network provider.)

In Switzerland the SMS function is not supported within the ISDN network (status: September 2003).

Ask your service provider,

- what charges are billed for sending and receiving a text message,
- which mobile phone operators you can send text messages to and which mobile phone operators you can receive text messages from,
- which functions your SMS service offers,
- how you are registered with SMS centres for which your phone may already be preconfigured – automatically by sending a message or by a special registration procedure.

Managing SMS service centres

SMS messages are exchanged through SMS service centres. To send and receive a text message, you require the phone number for your service provider's SMS centre. You have to store this phone number in your telephone.

You may enter up to ten SMS centres in your telephone.

Sending an SMS – send centre

You must enter the phone number of the SMS centre via which you want to send the SMS in your telephone and activate it as "send centre" (page 55 and page 56). This phone number will be used for sending all SMS messages.

As supplied, the "Anny Way" SMS centre has already been entered (number 0190 01504) and activated as the send centre. This means that, in Germany, you may send text messages immediately.

You can activate another SMS centre as the active send service centre. The send centre that was activated previously is then automatically deactivated.

Receiving an SMS

You can receive an SMS message via any SMS centre you have entered provided you have registered with these SMS centres as an SMS recipient (if registered, see page 57).

Entering, editing or deleting phone numbers for SMS centres

You can enter up to ten SMS centres.

Before entering or editing the number, please obtain information about special features and what the SMS service provider offers.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Service centres OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The phone number list appears.
	Select entry, e.g. **<empty>**.
	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Changing an entry:**
Edit entry OK	Confirm.
	Enter the phone number of the SMS centre.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Confirm.
or ...	**Delete an entry:**
Delete entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Hold down (return to idle status).

i

- If you delete the phone number of a send centre, then you must activate another SMS centre to be the send centre in order to be able to continue sending text messages.
- If your telephone is connected to a PABX, you may have to prefix the phone number with an access code (number with which you obtain an exchange line, usually "0") (this depends on your PABX), see page 70.

Activating/deactivating SMS send centre

To send an SMS you must activate the phone number for the SMS centre as the send centre. By doing this you determine via which SMS centre the text message is to be sent. Text messages can be received via all SMS centres entered, as long as you have previously been through the registration procedure (see the next chapter) as an SMS-capable connection.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Service centres OK	Select the menu item and confirm. You will now see the phone number list.
	Select the telephone number.
	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Activate SMS centre as the send centre:**
Serv.centre on? OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The display changes to **Serv.centre off?** The SMS centre is activated as the send centre. In the list the phone number of the SMS centre is marked with a ✓. The previous send centre is automatically deactivated.
or ...	**Deactivate SMS centre:**
Serv.centre off? OK	Select the menu item and confirm. SMS centre is deactivated.

i	◆ When the Service centres phone number list is opened, the display jumps immediately to the send centre. ◆ If you have not activated an SMS send centre you will not be able to send an SMS, but you will be able to receive text messages from all the SMS centres you have entered.

Registering/de-registering with an SMS centre

In order to be able to receive text messages on your phone you must first register your phone number with an SMS service provider. You can find out from the service provider concerned which information you need to send to register and de-register.

To register with an SMS service provider you must first enter the phone number of the SMS centre concerned and activate it as the send centre.

After you have registered, remember to re-activate the SMS centre as the send centre via which you wish to send text messages.

i	Take care to register the phone number (MSN) that is assigned to the handset as send MSN (page 113), and with which you are sending the text message. If you also want to send and receive text messages via other handsets with different MSN's, then you must also have these phone numbers registered.

Memory

The number of text messages that can be stored in the base depends on the size of the messages (about 11 text messages of up to 160 characters each). The memory is used for the incoming and outgoing message list. If the memory is full, the message **Text list full! Please delete entries** is displayed. Delete text messages you no longer require from the incoming and outgoing message lists.

You can check how much capacity your SMS memory has left (in %).

▷	Open the menu.
SMS OK	Confirm.
▷ **Available memory** OK	Select the menu item and confirm. Available memory is display in %.

Sending a text message and the outgoing message list

Notes on writing and sending an SMS message

If you are interrupted as you are writing (by a call, an incoming SMS or because the handset changes to idle status because of prolonged inactivity), the SMS is automatically stored in the **outgoing message list**. You can continue writing the SMS later (page 60).

Text messages that **cannot** be sent are assigned an error status (page 70) and are placed in the **incoming message list**.

Text messages are only stored automatically if sending is interrupted. If you wish to store a message then you must do so **before it is sent**.

i	Remember that some **service providers** will bill you for a cancelled call to the SMS centre.

Writingtext messages

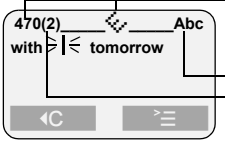
A **single** text message can be up to 160 characters long. If your text is longer, it will be sent **automatically** as a **linked** message. Up to four messages with 153 characters each can be linked. This means you can enter up to 612 characters. Bear in mind that linked messages incur correspondingly higher charges.

Remember that the service provider cannot deliver a text message that contains Greek or Cyrillic characters. Therefore you must select another input language.

When you have opened the input field for the text message, then press the display key . From the menu, select **Select Language** and then press OK to confirm your choice. Then select an input language and confirm the selection with OK. Press the end call key twice briefly, to return to the input field. The setting of the input language only applies to the current text message.

Write text messages as follows:

		Open the menu.
SMS	OK	Confirm.
Write message	OK	Confirm. The input field opens.
		Input your text (for text input see page 154).



EATONI predictive text is activated.

The counter displays how many characters you can still write. It counts down from 612 characters (the max. allowed number of characters with linked messages).

Upper/lower case and digits.

The number in parentheses indicates the message you are in (with linked messages). Example: You are in the second message.

The **EATONI** (page 155) predictive text feature helps you write your message The ⊆ icon tells you if EATONI is activated (the default setting is: on). You can deactivate EATONI anytime using ▷☰, ◁▷ **Predictive Text** OK.

i	◆ Please refer to the **Character Set Chart** (page 154) to see how to enter text. ◆ Use 1 to insert a space, and * to toggle between upper case, lower case and digits (page 154). ◆ You can find out how to correct text on page 12. ◆ If you receive a text message that is incomplete (e.g. because your phone's memory is full), you will see a message.

Saving text messages

Precondition: You have written a text message (page 58) and the input field is open.

▷☰	Press the display key to open the submenu.
◁▷ **Save Entry** OK	Select the menu item and confirm. You can then send the text message (page 59).

The message is stored in the **outgoing message list**. It can be retrieved and sent at a later time (page 60).

Sending a text message without saving it

Precondition: You have written a text message (page 58) and the input field is open.

▷☰	Press display key to open menu.
Send OK	Confirm.
either ...	
	Enter the recipient's number (with prefix).
or ...	**Select a number from the directory:**
◁▷	Open the directory.
◁▷ OK	Select entry and confirm. The number appears in the display.
... then	
▷☰+	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Send OK	Confirm.

i	The recipient's number must always include the **area code** (prefix), even if you are in that area.

Examples of phone number inputs:

08912345678	A national telephone number within the fixed network
077x1234567	A number within the mobile phone network

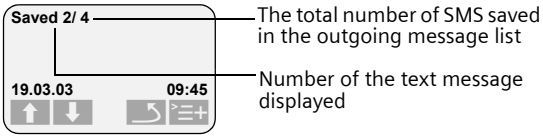
Opening the outgoing message list

The **outgoing message list** shows you:

- Text messages which you saved **before you sent them** (page 59).
- Text messages you could not send because, for example, you were interrupted by an incoming call while you were writing the message.

However, the list only shows text messages that are assigned to the same send MSN as the handset.

These messages are stored until you delete them.

		Open the menu.
SMS	OK	Confirm.
Outbox 4	OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The figure shown indicates how many text messages are stored in the outgoing message list.  Use to scroll in the list.

i	When the memory is full, you are prompted to delete messages (page 57).

Reading and deleting text messages in the outgoing message list

Precondition: You have opened the outgoing message list (page 60).

		Select SMS.
		Open the menu.
either ...		**Read SMS:**
Read textmessage	OK	Confirm. Use to view the continuation of the text message in the display.

or ...	**Delete SMS:**
Delete textmess. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Deleting the entire outgoing message list

This function deletes all the messages in the outgoing message list.

Precondition: You have opened the outgoing message list (page 60).

	Open the menu.
Delete list OK	Confirm.
YES	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
	Short press (back to idle status).

Sending or editing text messages in the outgoing message list

Precondition: You have opened a text message in the outgoing message list to read (page 60).

	Open the menu.
either ...	**Write and send a new text message :**
Write Message OK	Confirm. The input field is opened (page 58). You can write a new text message.
or ...	**Edit and send a stored text message:**
Use Text OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The input field is opened with the contents of the stored text message. You can edit the text.

You can now send the message as described on page 59.

Inserting pre-written text or an email address in an SMS

You can insert a text template or an emoticon anywhere in your SMS. The following are available on your telephone:

- 3 Text templates: **I am late**, **Let's meet** , **Congratulations**
- 8 Emoticons: **Happy :-)**, **Sad :-(**, **Wink ;-)**, **Serious :-|**, **Sarcastic :->**, **Laughing :-D**, **Surprised :-o**, **Crying :'-(**

You can also insert an email address if it is stored in your email directory (page 46). Text templates, emoticons and email addresses are inserted wherever the cursor is.

Precondition: You are writing an SMS (page 58), and the input field is open.

☰	Press the display key to open the submenu.
either ...	**Inserting text templates:**
◁▷ **Insert Template** OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
◁▷ **Let's meet** OK	Select a template and confirm, e.g. **Let's meet** .
or ...	**Inserting an emoticon:**
◁▷ **Insert Smiley** OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
◁▷ **Laughing :-D** OK	Select the emoticon and confirm.
or ...	**Inserting an email address:**
◁▷ **Insert e-mail Adr.** OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The email directory will be opened.
◁▷ **Anna@...** OK	Select an address and confirm.

Sending a text message to an e-mail address

You can send a text message to an e-mail address. To do this you should write the recipient's e-mail address at the start of the text message and send this text message to the call number of the e-mail service of your SMS send centre.

Entering the e-mail address at the start of the text message

Enter the recipient's e-mail address at the start of your text message. Use a space to separate the e-mail address from the message text or, if required for other providers, by inserting a colon. As long as the **text area is empty**, you can copy the email address from your email directory (page 46).

If the predictive text feature is **deactivated** enter the character "@" using the hash key # (press 2 x), the colon using the 0+ key (press 8 x) and the space character using the 1 key (press 1 x).

If predictive text is **on**, enter "@" by giving the hash key # 1 long and 1 short press.

With ☰, ◁▷ **Save Entry** OK you can save temporarily.

Precondition: You are writing a text message (page 58) and the input field is open.

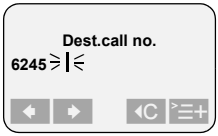
either ...	**Copying an address from the email directory:**
EMail📖	Press the display key. It is displayed as long as the input field is empty. The email directory will be opened (page 46).
◁▷ **Anna@...** OK	Select an email address and confirm.
or ...	**Entering an email address manually:**
⌨	Enter the full e-mail address and end it with a space or a colon.

Entering the text of the message

	Enter the SMS text. Email address, space, SMS text (example)
	Press display key to open menu.
Send OK	Confirm.

Sending a text message as an e-mail

You must send the text messages to the **number for the e-mail service of your send centre**..

	Enter the number of the e-mail service. 
	Press display key to open menu.
Send OK	Confirm.

Receiving text messages, incoming message list

Notes on receiving a text message

New SMS are signalled by a message in the display, by flashing of the message key ✉ and by a confirmation tone for all handsets with the same incoming MSN. The date and time (transferred from the SMS centre) are indicated for each SMS received.

The incoming message list contains only those text messages sent to a receive MSN to which your handset is assigned. If no MSN's have been set up, then all text messages received are shown on all handsets.

In the receiving list the new (unread) messages are before the old messages. New and old messages are sorted according to their time of arrival: oldest new message, ... , newest message, oldest old message, ..., newest old message.

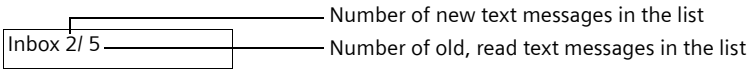
Linked text messages are displayed as **one** SMS. If an incoming linked message is too long or has not transferred completely, it will be split into individual messages and stored in the incoming message list.

Opening the incoming message list

The **incoming message list** shows you:

- all received messages,
- messages that could not be sent despite several attempts. These messages are all stored with an error status (page 70).

The message list is displayed for example as follows



Opening with the message key

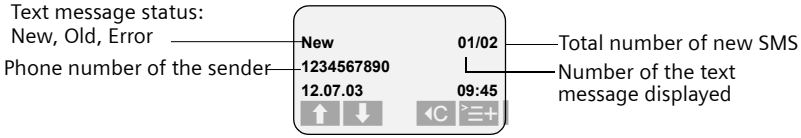
Precondition: There is at least one **new** message in the list.

✉	Press the message key. If there are no new calls/messages in the other lists, then the first **new** text message is opened immediately. Otherwise:
Inbox 2/ 5 OK	If necessary, select and confirm. The incoming message list is opened and the first **new** message is displayed.

Opening with the menu

	Open the menu.
SMS OK	Confirm.
Inbox 2/ 5 OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

A new text message is displayed, for example, as follows:



If the SMS memory is full and the SMS centre is unable to transfer any more, an appropriate message will appear on the screen. Press OK to confirm and delete text messages you no longer need from the incoming and outgoing message list (see also page 60 and page 65). The SMS centre will then re-transmit the text message.

Reading and deleting text messages in the incoming message list

Precondition: You have opened the incoming message list (page 64).

	Select SMS.
	Open the menu.
either ...	**Read SMS:**
Read textmessage OK	Confirm. Use to view the continuation of the text message in the display.
or ...	**Delete SMS:**
Delete textmess. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Hold down (return to idle status).

Once you have opened a new message it acquires the status **Old**.

Deleting the entire incoming message list

This function deletes **all new and old** text messages in the incoming message list.
Precondition: You have opened the incoming message list (page 64).

	Open the menu.
Delete list OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
YES	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Replying to or forwarding text messages

While you read a text message you can use the following functions:

	Press display key to open menu.
either ...	**Reply to an incoming message:**
Reply OK	Confirm. You can reply to the message immediately in the input field.
or ...	**Answer "Yes":**
Answer: Yes OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Answer "No":**
Answer: No OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

or ...	**Edit the incoming message and return it:**
Use Text OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Edit text.
... then	
	Press display key to open menu.
Send OK	Confirm and then send the message as described on page 59.
or ...	
Save Entry OK	Select and confirm to store the entry.

To forward a text message, open the menu with and select the **Send** option. Now send the message as described on page 59.

When replaying, attachments (e.g. logo, melody) are not sent.

However, the attachments are sent when forwarding an SMS. Forwarding an SMS with attachments is not permitted by some service providers and thus will be rejected. Select the **Use Text** function to forward the SMS without attachments. Confirm the prompt **New SMS will not contain picture/ melody. Proceed?**

Calling back the text message sender

Open the SMS incoming message list (page 64). **Now**:

	Select entry.
either ...	
	Press the talk key.
or ...	
	Open the menu.
Dial number OK	Select.
or ...	**Dial using network provider's prefix:**
	Open the menu.
NET list OK	Open the speed dial list (network provider list).
OK	Select entry and confirm. The network provider's prefix is put in front of the phone number.
... then	
OK	If **MSN next call** is set for the handset(page 113), select the outgoing MSN and confirm.

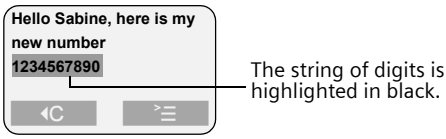
Callback begins at once. The phone number is deleted from the calls list and entered in the last number redial list.

i	To a PABX: The access code (outside line code) is automatically put before the phone number (page 129).

Copying a phone number from the SMS text into the directory

You telephone can "detect" phone numbers in a received SMS. It displays these by highlighting the string of digits (max. 32 characters). If the SMS text contains multiple strings of digits, the first string of digits is highlighted. Scrolling the SMS text with ◁▷ will automatically highlight the next string of digits etc..

Precondition: You have opened a text message in the incoming message list to read (page 65).



☰	Press display key to open menu.
◁▷ **Copy to Directory** OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
◁▷ ▦	Go to the **Name** line and enter the name (max. 16-digits) (for entering text, see page 154).
☰	Press display key to open menu.
Save Entry OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
⏻	**Long** press (back to idle status).

i	The phone number must be stored in the directory together with its area code (prefix) so that it can also be used for sending text messages.

Adding a text message sender's telephone number to the directory

Precondition: You have opened the incoming message list and selected a message (page 64).

◁▷	Press display key to open menu.
◁▷ **Copy to dir.** OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
◁▷ ▦	Go to the **Name** line and enter the name (max. 16-digits) (for entering text, see page 154).
☰	Press display key to open menu.
Save Entry OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
⏻	**Long** press (back to idle status).

i	You can create a special directory for SMS within your directory by putting an star (*) before the names.

Opening an attachment to an SMS

You can open an included attachment such as a logo. You can recognise an attachment because it is placed between "less than" and "greater than" symbols (e.g., <Logo>). For installation see page 69.

Precondition: You have opened a text message with attachment to read (page 65).

	Move the cursor to the line containing the attachment.
	Press display key to open menu.
View Content OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

i	An SMS can contain multiple attachments.

Using new ringer tones and logos for the handset

You can install other melodies to use in addition to the one provided with the handset and a logo (graphic) as well. For a selection of melodies and logos, browse these web pages on the Internet: www.my-siemens.com/ringtones (melodies) and www.my-siemens.com/logos (logos). The Internet pages will tell you which data is available in your country.

You can use the following formats:

- "iMelody" for melodies
- Large Picture (32*32) and Small Picture (16*16) for logos

After you have ordered melodies and/or logos to be installed, you will receive one or more **SMS** (in the incoming message list, page 63) with the data.

i	There are charges for installing data. Ask your service provider.

You can install a **max. of five new melodies**. Each **new melody** replaces one of the ten melodies available in the handset, at most, the melodies 6–10.

The **logo** replaces the display in idle status(page 13), which could cover the date, time and the name. You can install**only one** logo.

The logo will disappear briefly under the following conditions:

- Pressing any key,
- a battery warning tone, an appointment, reminder, or wake-up call is signalled,
- or you take the handset out of the base/charger or you return it there.

Installing a new ringer tone or a logo

Precondition: You have opened the incoming message list (page 64).

	Scroll to the desired text message as necessary.
Read textmessage OK	Confirm. You can see in the title or icons that data for installing the melodies/logos you have chosen has been sent. You will hear the new melody or see a preview of the logo.
	If you like the melody/logo:
Install	Press the display key to initiate the installation.
Yes	Press the display key to install the new melody or logo.
	For a new melody: chose the number of the old ringer melody you want to replace with the new melody. You will hear the old ringer melody to be sure it is the one you want.
OK	Confirm.

If you don't like the melody/logo, press No after Install. The installation is cancelled.

i	◆ After installation, the melodies and logos will remain in the SMS incoming message list until you delete the SMS (page 65). ◆ Other handsets registered to the same base can also have the melody or logo installed. ◆ For more information about opening a logo or melody contained as an attachment in an SMS, see page 68.

Activating/deactivating a logo

	Open the menu.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Screen Picture OK	Select and confirm, in order to activate or deactivate the logo (✓ = on).
	Long press (back to idle status).

i	The logo is not displayed: ◆ during a call, ◆ if the room monitor or Walk and Talk mode is activated, ◆ if you just received an SMS or a message on the answering machine (on the Gigaset with integrated answering machine), ◆ or when the handset has been deregistered.

Text messages to a PABX

You can only receive a text message when the Calling Line Identification is forwarded to the extension of the PABX (CLIP).

The CLIP of the phone number of the SMS centre is evaluated in your telephone.

If your phone is connected to a PABX, you may have to prefix the number of the SMS centre with an access code (this depends on your PABX). You can store the access code in your base (page 129).

If in doubt, you can test your PABX by sending a text message to your own number and putting the access code before the number of the SMS centre. If you do not receive the message, send another one, this time without the access code.

When you send messages, your sender number may be sent without your extension number. The recipient cannot reply to you directly in this case.

Errors when sending and receiving a text message

Errors when sending a text message

Text messages that **cannot** be sent are assigned an error status **FD error:** and are placed in the **incoming message list**.

The following error codes are displayed:

Error code	Description
E0	Calling Line Identification is permanently deactivated (page 24).
FE	Error occurred during message transfer.
FD	Connection to SMS centre failed. Text messages cannot be sent or received if the number of an SMS centre is missing or incorrectly stored. Check that the number of the SMS centre has been stored.
C3	Wrong recipient phone number

You can display information about the cause of errors on the screen.

Precondition: You have opened the incoming message list (page 64).

	Scroll to the text message you were unable to send.
	Press display key to open menu.
Error status OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The cause of the error appears in the display.
BACK	Now press the display key to return to the incoming message list.

Errors when receiving a text message

A message appears on the screen if your phone cannot receive any more text messages.

You **cannot** receive text messages under the following conditions:

- call forwarding has been activated with **All Calls**,
- the memory (incoming and outgoing message lists) is full.

Self-help with error messages

Error Message	Possible cause	Remedy
You cannot send messages.	The "Calling Line Identification" (CLIP) is permanently withheld.	Permit "Calling Line Identification" (CLIP) again (page 24).
	Message transfer was interrupted (e.g. by an incoming call).	Re-send the message.
	No number or an invalid number is entered for the SMS centre activated as the send centre.	Enter phone number (page 55).
You receive a message whose text is incomplete.	Your phone's memory is full.	Delete some old messages (page 65).
The message is played back.	Your terminal is stored in the database of your SMS provider as having no fixed network SMS functionality, i.e. you are no longer registered with the provider.	Register the terminal (again) for SMS reception.
Messages are only received during the day.	If your SMS network provider's database does not yet know that your terminal supports fixed network SMS functionality, then it will only attempt to deliver messages during the day.	Register the terminal (again) for SMS reception to get it re-assigned in the database.

Making cost-effective calls

Sign up with a network provider who offers particularly low-cost call rates (call-by-call) or view the call charges on the handset. You can use the speed dial list to manage your call-by-call numbers.

i	You manage entries in the speed dial list in the same way as entries in the directory by opening the speed dial list with the ⊙ key instead of the directory. You will find instructions on storing, editing and deleting entries starting on page 36.

Linking a call-by-call number with a phone number

This function can be used to put a network provider's prefix in front of the telephone number ("linking").

⊙	Open the network access list.
⊙ ☰	Select the entry and press the display key.
Display Number OK	Confirm.
either ...	**Enter the telephone number:**
⌨	Enter the telephone number.
or ...	**Select a number from the directory:**
⊙ ⊙ OK	Open the directory, select an entry and confirm.
... then	
✆	Press the talk key. The number is dialled.

Displaying the call duration

When you are called, the call duration is automatically displayed in the display.

When you call someone, the call duration is displayed only until the display of the call charges is established.

When the call is ended, the call duration display stops. It remains for approximately 3 seconds before the handset goes into idle status.

Displaying call charges

You can display the charges if you have requested this from your network provider.

You can check the ongoing units /total charges and the charges of the last call made (depending on setting, see page 75) on each Comfort handset. The total charges includes the charges accrued by this handset. If you don't receive any rate information from your network provider, the call duration is displayed.

Setting up the charge calculation

Ask your network provider if the call charges are transferred as a rate unit or as an amount. Set the account type **Units cent.off.** or **Costs cent.off.** accordingly.

If you have selected **Costs cent.off.**, but only units are transmitted by the network provider, after the call, it will automatically switch to **Units cent.off.**.

By factory default, **Units cent.off.** is pre-set**.**

Setting the account type

	Open the menu.
Call Charges OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Type of calcul. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	**Set Costs cent.off.:**
Costs cent.off. OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).
or ...	**Set Units cent.off.:**
Units cent.off. OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

i	If you have also entered a factor (see "Entering the price per unit" section below), the call charges are multiplied by this. You can also use a factor if you want to charge higher call charges, otherwise switch off factor (charges should be increased by a factor of 2);.

The **No rate** pre-set will display units.

Entering the price per unit

In order for the invoice type **Units cent.off.** to be able to calculate charges, you must define the currency and the price per unit (by factory default: **No rate**). For this charge calculation, **Units cent.off.** must be set (factory default).

	Open the menu.
Call Charges OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Type of calcul. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	
Rate --.-- OK	Select the factor with a comma, and confirm.
or ...	
Rate ---- OK	Select the factor without a comma, and confirm.
... then	
	Enter the factor (4-digit), e.g. 0019 for 0.19 Euro
	If necessary, enter the currency (factory default: EUR)
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
OK	Select the currency (€, $, £) and confirm.
	Saving the factor:
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Confirm.

Displaying and deleting the cost overview

Depending on the setting, call or charge units for each internal party, for each set-up MSN, and for the entire system are displayed:

	Open the menu.
Call Charges OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Cost overview OK	Confirm. The total amount for all internal parties is displayed.
	Scroll to the accounts of the individual internal parties or set-up MSNs.
	If necessary, delete the amount from the cost overview:
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Delete amount OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

i	Total and individual charges must be deleted separately. I.e., if you delete the amount of an MSN, the individual charges of the handsets are retained, and must be deleted separately.

Activating/deactivating the charges of the last call

You can display the total charges and the charges of the last call for this handset on the handset.

By factory default, **Last charge** is deactivated.

	Open the menu.
Call Charges OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Last charge OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).
	Press end call key.

After activating the function, the call charges are displayed on the handset when you press the talk key. If the connection was not successful, the charges are displayed after ending the call.

Operating more than one handset

Using a handset as a room monitor

With this function, a previously stored internal or external number is called when a set noise level in the room is reached (the baby cries). When you answer the call you hear the noise in the baby's room. The room monitor **remains activated** on the handset even after you hang up.

The handset should be between 1 and 2 metres away from the baby. The microphone must be directed towards the baby.

When the room monitor is activated, incoming calls to the handset which is near the baby are indicated **without a ring tone**, they are just shown on the display. The display and the key pad are not illuminated.

When entering an external phone number, check the following:

- the handset must have the authorisation **Unrestricted** (page 92).
- the number where the room monitor call is forwarded must not be blocked by an activated answering machine.

↯	**Always check the settings of the room monitor before you leave home, e.g. sensitivity and phone line.**

i	◆ If you redirect your room monitor to an external number, then you should tell that number's owner. ◆ A room monitor stops calling an **external** number after around 90 seconds. A room monitor stops calling an **internal** number (handset) after around 3 minutes. ◆ After the room monitor makes a call, the room monitor is blocked for 2 minutes. ◆ The room monitor function severely curtails the handset's operating time. If possible, place any handset that is in the vicinity of a baby in the charger. This ensures that the battery does not discharge. ◆ The room monitor function can also be used in Walk and Talk mode (page 80).

Activating the room monitor function and entering the "call to" number for the first time

	Step 1: Open input field for room monitor:
	Open the menu.
Add. Features OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Room Monitor OK	Confirm. The input field is opened.
	Step 2: Activate room monitor:
	Go to the line **Room M.: On**.
	Step 3: Enter the destination number:
Edit	Jump to the line **Call to:** and press the display key. The input field for the phone number is opened.
either ...	Enter an **internal** number as the destination number:
INT	Press the display key.
Save	Enter the internal phone number and press the display key. If the room monitor should call all registered handsets, then enter * instead of an internal phone number (group call).
or ...	Enter an **external** number as the destination number:
	Enter the telephone number.
	Press the display key.
Save Entry OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
... then	**Step 4: Set the sensitivity:**
	If required, jump to the line **Level:** and set the sensitivity for the noise level (**Low** or **High**).
Save	Press the display key. The room monitor function is now activated.

Once the room monitor is activated, switch directly to the room monitor setting with (open menu).

i

- If you want to copy the external phone number from the directory, press the bottom of the control key in the input field for the phone number (open directory). Select an entry with and confirm with OK.
- If you enter an **external** number as the destination number, only the **last 4 digits** will appear in the input field.

Changing previously set external "call to" numbers

Precondition: You currently have the input field open for the room monitor (Step 1, page 77).

Edit	Jump to the line **Call to:** and press the display key.
C	Delete existing phone number.
either ...	**Enter the external destination number:**
	Enter the new telephone number.
	Press display key to open menu.
Save Entry OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
or ...	**Enter the internal destination number:**
INT	Press the display key.
Save	Enter the internal phone number or (*) (hold down = group call) and press the display key.

Continue as is described on page 77 starting with step 4.

Editing a previously set internal destination number

The previously set internal phone number must first be deleted.

Precondition: You currently have the input field open for the room monitor (Step 1, page 77).

Edit	Jump to the line **Call to:** and press the display key.
	Deleting the internal phone number:
Delete	Press the display key to delete the phone number.
either ...	**Enter a new external phone number:**
Save	Press the display key to confirm the delete.
Edit	Press the display key.
	Enter the telephone number.
	Press display key to open menu.
Save Entry OK	Confirm. The entry is stored.
or ...	**Enter the new internal phone number:**
Save	Enter the new internal phone number and press the display key.

Continue as is described on page 77 starting with step 4.

Deactivating the room monitor

Press the OFF display key on the room monitor handset to deactivate the room monitor function.

i	To reactivate the room monitor function with the same telephone number, you must turn on the activation again and save with Save.

Deactivating the room monitor remotely

You can deactivate the room monitor remotely. Take the call from the room monitor and press the 9 # keys. The room monitor function will deactivate around 90 seconds after the call ends. After this, the room monitor will make no further calls. The other room monitor functions on the handset (e.g. no ringer) will remain activated until you press the display key Off on the handset that is in the baby's room.

Setting the Walk and Talk mode

The Walk and Talk function allows two handsets to communicate with each other no matter how far they are from the base.

Example: You go on holiday and take two handsets with Walk and Talk functionality with you. Set the Walk and Talk function **on both handsets**. You can now communicate using the handsets.

Precondition:

- Both handsets have been registered to the same base **or**
- Both handsets are registered to different bases and both are set to **Best Base** (page 21) **or**
- One of the handsets is not registered to any base and the registered handset is set to **Best Base or**
- Neither handset is registered to a base.

i	In Walk and Talk mode ◆ The maximum range between handsets is 300 metres outdoors, ◆ The handsets cannot be reached by incoming calls. ◆ Handset operating times are severely curtailed.

Activating/deactivating the Walk and Talk mode

	Open the menu.
Add. Features OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Walk and Talk OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Deactivate the Walk and Talk mode:
Off	Press the display key.

If, when you are in Walk and Talk mode, you press the talk key or the handsfree key, the call will go to all the handsets that are in Walk and Talk mode. The connection is made with the first handset to answer the Walk and Talk call.

i	◆ "Selecting the ringer" (page 104), "Activating/deactivating ringer or advisory tones" (page 108) and "Activating/deactivating keypad lock" (page 10) are available in Walk and Talk mode. ◆ To open the menu, press the display key . ◆ The Walk and Talk mode is retained even when you switch your handset off and back on.

Using a handset in Walk and Talk mode as a room monitor

You can also use the room monitor function in Walk and Talk mode.

	Press the display key.
Room Monitor OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Jump to the line **Room M.:** and activate the room monitor.
	If necessary, scroll to the **Level:** line and set the sensitivity for the noise level (**Low** or **High**).
Save	Press the display key. The room monitor function is now activated.

The room monitor will call all the handsets that are in the Walk and Talk mode.

⚡	**Always check the settings of the room monitor before you leave home, e.g. sensitivity and phone line.**

Press the display key Off on the room monitor handset to deactivate the room monitor. The handset returns to the normal Walk and Talk mode.

Setting the answering machine

On the base:	CX150isdn	SX150isdn	CX253isdn	SX255isdn	SX353isdn

Once you have connected your telephone your answering machine is ready for use.

Answering machine AM1 is set to be shown and activated. It displays all messages (on all receive MSN's). AM1 can be played back and set from all handsets (factory default). All phrases in the answering machine are in English.

As supplied, AM2 and AM3 are hidden (page 82) and are deactivated. To use them, they must be shown and all shown answering machines must be assigned their own incoming MSN.

You can configure AM1, AM2 and AM3 separately.

Assigning a receive MSN

You can assign one or more receive MSN's to each (shown) answering machine (AM1, AM2, AM3). However, each MSN can only be assigned to one answering machine (only one recording can be running at any one time).

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Confirm.
	Select answering machine, **INT 91: AM 91** for AM1, **INT 92: AM 92** for AM2 or **INT 93: AM 93** for AM3.
	Open the submenu.
Receive MSN OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select the receive MSN and confirm, e.g. **MSN: Anna**. Only the MSN's that are still not assigned to an answering machine are offered. Repeat this process for all incoming MSNs you want to assign to the answering machine.

Once an answering machine has been assigned to a receive MSN it can only be set and operated via handsets/terminals to which the same receive MSN is assigned.

Hiding/showing an answering machine

If you only want to operate one or two answering machines for your connection you can remove the other answering machine(s) from all displays and menus. When supplied, AM1 is set to show, AM2 and AM3 are hidden.

When hidden there must be no messages or memos remaining in the answering machine:

- If there are new messages/memos you have not yet played back on the answering machine, you will be notified when you try to hide it. The answering machine will continue to be **shown**.
- If, when you wish to hide an answering machine, it still contains old messages/ memos that have already been played back, you will be asked if you wish to delete the old recordings. The answering machine is only hidden if you confirm with YES .

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Confirm. The list of internal numbers is displayed.
	Select the internal numbers for the answering machine (**INT 91**, **INT 92** or **INT 93**).
	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Hide answering machine:**
Hide AM? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Show answering machine:**
Show AM? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

When an activated answering machine is hidden it is deactivated. When it is set to show again, the answering machine returns to the status it had before it was hidden.

Specifying the number of rings before the answering machine starts

You can set when you want the answering machine to activate (after how many rings). The options are: **1 ring tone**, **2 ring tone**, ..., **9 ring tone**. Instead of a set number of rings, you can also set the **charge saving** setting **Automatic 2/4** (factory default). In this setting the answering machine activates **automatically**:

- after 2 rings if there are new messages;
- after 4 rings if there are no new messages.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
No. of rings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Automatic 2/4	OK	Select the number of rings or **Automatic 2/4** and confirm (✓ = set).

Activating/deactivating voice announcement of date and time

You can have the recording date and -time (time stamp) announced when each message/memo is played back (activated when supplied).

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Message/Memo	OK	Confirm.
Time stamp	OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

Setting the recording time and recording quality

You can set the maximum length of a message and its recording quality. The recording quality determines the total recording time of your answering machine.

On the **High quality** setting the total recording time is up to 12 min, on **Long recording** (standard quality, generally adequate) up to 25 min. When the phone is supplied the recording quality **Long recording** and the recording time **Maximum** are set.

i	The recording of a call ends: ◆ after a pause in speaking lasting more than 8 seconds; ◆ at the end of a call; the caller terminates the connection; ◆ after the set maximum recording time has expired, on **Maximum** setting, when the memory is full.

Setting the recording time

You can limit the maximum length of a message to **1 minute**, **2 minutes** or **3 minutes**. If you set the recording time to **Maximum** (factory setting), it is "unlimited" (until the memory is full).

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Message/Memo OK	Confirm.
Message length OK	Confirm.
Maximum OK	Select the recording time and confirm, e.g. **Maximum** (✓ = activated).

i	When the recording duration is reached, the concluding announcement is played automatically, if recorded. Then the connection is closed down. The recording duration does not apply to memos.

Setting recording quality

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
AM quality OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	**Set high quality:**
High quality OK	Confirm.
or ...	**Set long recording:**
Long recording OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Activating/deactivating automatic pause

If automatic pause is activated the answering machine switches to pause mode after playing back a message or memo. The next message is played back when you press the display key >...

When the phone is supplied automatic pause is deactivated.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Automatic pause OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

Locking the answering machine, defining AM PIN

You can protect your answering machine against unauthorised access. To do this, define an AM PIN (Personal Identification Number) and activate the AM lock. The settings may then only be changed and the messages played back after the PIN has been entered.

i	The answering machine can only be controlled remotely if you have defined an AM PIN.

Entering, changing the AM PIN

When supplied, the AM PIN is preconfigured to 0000.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Change AM-PIN OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter new AM PIN (up to 8 digits) and confirm.
OK	Repeat the new AM PIN and confirm.

If you made a typing error when entering the AM PIN, you can delete your entry using the C key and enter it again.

Activating/deactivating the AM lock

When the phone is supplied the answering machine lock is deactivated.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
AM lock OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = lock set).

Setting the time control

You can set the answering machine so that it is activated or deactivated depending on the time of day, as well as using different announcements depending on the time of day.

You can define (for the 24-hour day) up to four time sections with different settings for the answering machine. You must specify a start time for each time section. The start time of the 2nd time section is the end time of the 1st time section, etc.. The start time of the 1st time section is the end time of the last defined time section. For each section, you can set if the answering machine should be activated/deactivated and which announcement or announcement only should be used.

You specify the time control for work days (Monday to Friday). On the weekend (Saturday and/or Sunday), either the time control of the work days can be used, or one of the announcements is activated for the entire day, or the answering machine is deactivated for the entire day.

Example:
The answering machine of your office should be deactivated during normal office hours (8:00 to 5:00 p.m.). Only during the lunch hour (12:00 to 3:00 p.m.) should the answering machine be activated using announcement 1. After office hours (5:00 to 8:00 p.m.) the answering machine should use announcement only. The following time sections must be defined:

1. Start time 08:00, AM off
2. Start time 12:00, announcement 1
3. Start time 13:00, AM off
4. Start time 5:00 p.m., announce only

Defining start times and announcements for Monday to Friday

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Time control OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Mon - Fri OK	Select the menu item and confirm. ✓ = at least one start time is entered.
OK	Select entry for the time section, e.g., ****:** Announcement 1**, and confirm.
Select ann. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Announcement 1 OK	Select **Announcement 1, Announcement 2, Announcem. only** or **AM off** and confirm.
	Press the display key.
Start time OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter the start time (4-digit). The start time specifies the end of the previous time section.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Setting time control for Saturday or Sunday

By factory default, the time control for work days is used – **As for Mon-Fri**.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Time control OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	
Saturday OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	
Sunday OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
... then	
As for Mon-Fri OK	Select **As for Mon-Fri**, **Ann. 1 24h**, **Ann. 2 24h**, **Ann. only 24h** or **AM off** and confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Activating/deactivating time control

By factory default, time control is deactivated.

Precondition: You have at least set a start time (page 86) and have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Time control OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).
either ...	**Activate time control:**
Activate? OK	Confirm.
or ...	**Deactivate time control:**
Deactivate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Activating/deactivating automatic listen in on the handset

You can set your answering machine to switch a handset assigned to it automatically to listen in when a message is recorded.

When supplied, automatic listen in is deactivated.

Assigning a handset

Only one handset may be assigned to an answering machine. You can choose a handset to which one of the answering machine's receive MSN's is assigned. Only terminals that support handsfree talking are displayed. Auto pickup (page 89) must be activated.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Aut. listen in OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Select HS OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select the handset and confirm, e.g. **type for Int13: Anna**.

Activating/deactivating listen in

You can only activate the listen in function if a handset has been assigned to the answering machine.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Aut. listen in OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	**Activate listen in:**
Activate? OK	Confirm.
or ...	**Deactivate listen in:**
Deactivate? OK	Confirm.

Activating/deactivating automatic pickup

With automatic pickup you can take a call directly from the answering machine (announcement or recording is running) on any handset or by lifting a receiver (telephone with cord) providing the same receive MSN is assigned to all devices. You just need to press the talk key on the handset. The recording of the call will then stop.

As supplied, automatic pickup is activated.

Preconditions:

- To pick up a call, the handset requires at least the authorisation **Incoming only** (page 92).
- The same receive MSN is assigned to both the answering machine and the handset/terminal.

i	If automatic listen in is activated for a handset (page 88) then the call can only be taken on this handset.

			Open the menu.
	Base Settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	System settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	AM auto. pickup	OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

Activating/deactivating automatic notification via text message

When you receive new messages on the answering machine your telephone can automatically send a text message to you on an external phone number (e.g., to a mobile phone). A text message of this kind will read, for example:

New message: 01712205625 for office at 18:27 hrs on TH, 19.07. You have 1 new AM message.

Automatic text message notification is not available in all countries.

i	To send the SMS, an SMS send centre must be entered (page 55).

Entering destination phone number for a text message

No destination number has been stored.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
SMS notificat. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter destination number (up to 20 digits).
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Changing or deleting the destination number for a text message

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
SMS notificat. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	**Enter or change the destination number:**
Change number OK	Confirm.
	Change the destination number.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Confirm.
or ...	**Delete the destination number:**
Delete number OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Activating/deactivating text message notification

You can only activate text message notification if a destination number is stored.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
SMS notificat. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Activate text message notification:**
Activate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Deactivate text message notification:**
Deactivate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Security settings

Changing the system PIN

You can protect the following settings against unauthorised access using the system PIN (Personal Identification Number):

- Call charge settings (◉ / **Call Charges)**
- Internal and external call forwarding (◉ **Base Settings/ Ext. call forw.** or **Int. call forw.**)
- SMS service centres, party configurations, security, ISDN, and system settings (◉ / **Base Settings** / **Settings**)
- Getting started wizard (◉ / **Base Settings** / **Installation**)

The system PIN will not work with the number 0000.

When supplied, the system PIN is preconfigured to 0000.

◉	Open the menu.
◉ **Base Settings** OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
◉ **Settings** OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Providing you choose a number other than 0000: Enter PIN and confirm.
Security OK	Confirm.
◉ **Change PIN** OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter new system PIN (up to 8 digits, 0 to 9) and confirm.
OK	Repeat the new system PIN and confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

!	Memorise the new system PIN! If you forget it, the device will require technical intervention. If this happens, contact the Siemens Hotline (page 152).

Defining authorisation

You can set different authorisations for all registered devices:

- **Unrestricted** (set as factory default)
  All devices can answer incoming calls and make external/internal outgoing calls.
- **Incoming only**
  The devices can only answer incoming calls. External calls cannot be made. Internal calls can be made. Emergency numbers can be dialled.
- **Internal only**
  The devices can only make and answer internal calls. Emergency numbers can be dialled.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	If required, enter the PIN and confirm.
Security OK	Confirm.
Authorisation OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Internal 11	Select the internal number, e.g., **Internal 11.**
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Internal Only OK	Select authorisation, e.g., **Internal Only**, and confirm. The set authorisation is marked with a ✓.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Emergency numbers

By default, the country-specific emergency numbers are entered. These cannot be edited or deleted. You may enter five emergency numbers of your own choice.

i	The emergency number can also be dialled by a handset with restricted authorisation (e.g., **Internal only**).

Setting up, editing, reading and deleting personal emergency numbers

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	If required, enter the PIN and confirm.
Security OK	Confirm.
Emergency nos.	Select. The emergency numbers list is opened.
<no entry>	Select list entry, e.g., **<no entry>.**

	Press the display key to open the submenu.
either ...	**Set up or edit emergency number:**
Change number OK	Confirm.
	Enter new emergency number (up to 32 digits) or edit existing emergency number. You can also copy the number from the directory or speed dial list.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Confirm.
or ...	**View emergency number:**
Display number OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Delete emergency number:**
Delete number OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

i	If your phone is connected to a PABX you may have to enter the applicable access code (outside line code, e.g. 0 ; see page 129) before the emergency number. This also applies to emergency numbers you have pre-set and for which you need to re-enter as an alternative, for example, "0110" and "0112".

Dialling emergency numbers

Precondition: The handset is blocked for external dialling (page 92).

	Press the talk key.
EMERG.	Press the display key.
... then	Dialling the emergency number.
	Enter the emergency number.

If the dialled number does not match the emergency number entered, the call is rejected with the display "**Number is not emergency no.**".

Date and Time

Setting the date and the time

The first time you make a call on your phone, the date and time are transmitted by the exchange.

You can choose between the 12 hour and the 24 hour display (factory setting) for the time (a.m. = 1st half of the day; p.m. = 2nd half of the day).

	Open the menu.
Calendar/Clock OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Date/Time OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter the date:
	In the **Date:** line, enter the day/month/year.
	Enter the time:
	Scroll to the **Time:** line and enter the hours/minutes in a 4-digit format.
	Select display mode:
	Scroll to the **Time Mode:** line if you want to choose between 12-hour and 24 hour mode.
Save	Press the display key to save the entry.

In 12-hour mode you can scroll to the **Time:** line and then use the display key am/pm to switch between **am** and **pm**.

Setting the alarm clock

You can use your handset as an alarm clock.

Precondition: You have set the date and time.

Activating and setting the alarm clock

If you want to use your handset as an alarm clock, you have to set the alarm time, choose a melody and activate the alarm clock.

	Open the menu.
Calendar/Clock OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Alarm Clock OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The current setting is displayed.

	Switching the alarm clock on:
	In the **Room M.:** line, select **On**.
	Enter the time for wake-up call:
	Scroll to the **Time:** line and enter the hours/minutes in a 4-digit format, e.g., 0+ 7pqrs 1 5 jkl for "7:15 a.m.".
am/pm	When in 12-hour mode (page 94): press the display key if you want to switch between **am** and **pm**.
Save	Press the display key to save the entry.
	Long press (back to idle status). You will see the ⏰ icon.

i	◆ The alarm clock will only ring if the handset is in the idle status. The alarm clock will not ring if the room monitor function is activated, a call is being made, or during automatic redial. ◆ How to change the volume and melody is explained starting on (page 105).

Switching the alarm clock off

The alarm clock is set to a particular time but you do not want it to ring.

			Open the menu.
	Calendar/Clock	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Alarm Clock	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
			In the **Room M.:** line, select **Off**.
Save			Now press the display key to confirm the setting.
			Long press (back to idle status).

Deactivating the wake-up call

A wake-up call with deactivated ringer melody is signalled on the handset. The display shows **Alarm Clock**. Press the display key Silence or **any key** to turn off the wake-up call. The wake-up call will ring for 30 seconds if it is not answered sooner.

Setting appointments

You can use your handset to remind yourself of up to five appointments. To do this, you have to save the times.

Activating and setting appointments

	Open the menu.
Calendar/Clock OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Set Appoints. OK	Confirm.
Appoint. 2 OK	Select the appointment (1-5) and confirm.
	Activating the appointment:
	In the **Room M.:** line, select **On**.
	Enter the date:
	Scroll to the **Date:** line and enter the day/month in a 4-digit format. **Example:** For 20.05. enter 2abc 0+ 0+ 5jkl.
	Enter the time:
	Scroll to the **Time:** line and enter the hours/minutes in a 4-digit format. **Example:** For 9:05 enter 0+ 9wxyz 0+ 5jkl.
am/pm	If in 12-hour mode (page 94): you can switch between **am** and **pm**.
	Specifying the appointment:
Edit	Scroll to the **Notes:** line and press the display key.
OK	Enter a name (max. 16 characters) (for entering letters and characters see page 154) and confirm.
Save	Press the display key to save the entry.
	Long press (back to idle status). You will see the icon ⏰.

i	◆ If you do not enter a name, the display will then show "Appointment...". ◆ How to change the volume and melody is explained starting on page 105. ◆ An appointment will be displayed only if the handset is in idle status. It will not be displayed if the room monitor function is activated, a call is being made, or during automatic redial.

Cancelling an appointment

	Open the menu.
Calendar/Clock OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Set Appoints. OK	Confirm.
Appoint. 2 OK	Select the appointment (1-5) and confirm.
	Select setting **Off**.
Save	Now press the display key to confirm the setting.

Switching off or answering an appointment alarm

An appointment is signalled with the selected ringer melody (page 105). In the display you will see for example **Appoint. 2**. Press the display key Silence or SMS, to switch off the appointment alarm. The appointment call will ring for 30 seconds if it is not answered sooner.

i	When an appointment is displayed, you can open the SMS menu with the SMS display key and write and send an SMS.

Displaying missed appointments, and anniversaries

If you do not accept an appointment or anniversary alarm when it rings (page 42), it will be saved in a list.

	Open the menu.
Calendar/Clock OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Missed Dates OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The list of appointments/anniversaries will open.
	Select appointment/anniversary. This will display information about the appointment/ anniversary. A missed appointment is marked with ⏰, a missed anniversary with 🎂.
either ...	**Closing the list:**
Go Back	Press the display key.
or ...	**Deleting an appointment/anniversary:**
either ...	**Closing the list:**
	Press briefly.
or ...	**Deleting an appointment/anniversary:**
Delete	Press the display key.
... then	
	Long press (back to idle status).

i	◆ If there is a new appointment/anniversary in the list, the display shows Appoint. You can also use this display key to open the list of appointments/anniversaries. Once you have looked at all the new appointments, Appoint will disappear from the display. ◆ If the handset is deactivated at the time of an appointment/anniversary, the appointment/anniversary will be saved in the list. ◆ If the list doesn't contain any appointments/anniversaries, you can close it with Go Back .

Night service

You can set up call forwarding for each incoming MSN which forwards all incoming calls to an external phone number, to another internal party, or with a Gigaset with integrated answering machine to an answering machine. This can be done daily for a specified period of time (**Start time to End time**) and on weekends (**Sat/Sun all day**) automatically. For example, when a business might normally be closed (from 6:00 p.m. to 8:00 a.m.) all calls from the office could be forwarded to a private number.

When forwarding a call externally, only the MSN which is assigned to the handset as the incoming MSN can be forwarded from the handset.

By factory default, Night service is deactivated. To switch on Night service, first the forward destination must be defined.

i	If external call forwarding to an external phone number is activated using **Immediately** (page 116) at the time when Night service is supposed to start, the following applies: ◆ The call is forwarded to another phone number: call forwarding remains active until it is explicitly deactivated. ◆ The call is forwarded to the same phone number: call forwarding is deactivated until the end time of Night service is reached. The same applies when call forwarding is set up during Night service.

Setting the forward destination

Precondition: Night service is **deactivated** (page 101).

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Night service OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = Night service is activated). The list of MSNs is displayed.
OK	Select and confirm MSN, e.g. **MSN1: Anna**.
Forward. dest. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	**Set the external forward destination:**
External OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter the external destination phone number.
or ...	**Set the internal forward destination:**
Internal OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Internal 11	Select the internal number, e.g., **Internal 11**.
or ...	**Select an answering machine** (on Gigaset with integrated answering machine)**:**
Answering mach. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
AM2	Select the answering machine you would like e.g., **AM2** . The calls are forwarded to the selected answering machine.
... then	
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

i	◆ Night service, internal: If the internal party is not registered or cannot be reached (e.g. handset deactivated), the call is not signalled and the caller receives the busy signal. ◆ Night service to an answering machine: Even if the answering machine is deactivated, a call is signalled to the answering machine and the answering machine takes the call after the set number of rings (page 83).

Entering the start and end time for Night service

By factory default, the **Start time** is pre-set to 20:00 or 8:00 pm, and 08:00 or 8:00 am for the **End time.**

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Night service OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select and confirm MSN, e.g. **MSN1: Anna**.
either ...	**Enter the start time:**
Start time OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter the start time (4-digit).
or ...	**Enter the end time:**
End time OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter the end time (4-digit).
... then	
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Activating/deactivating Saturday/Sunday all day Night service:

If **Sat/Sun all day** is set, then Night service is active between the indicated start and end times from M-F, and all day on weekends. If **Sat/Sun all day** is deactivated, then calls are forwarded on the weekend between the set start and end time.

By factory default, **Sat/Sun all day** is activated.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Night service OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select and confirm MSN, e.g. **MSN1: Anna**.
Sat/Sun all day OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = On).
	Long press (back to idle status).

Activating/deactivating Night service

You can only activate Night service when you have entered a forward destination for the incoming MSN and when there is no forward destination currently activated for it.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Night service OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select and confirm MSN, e.g. **MSN1: Anna**.
either ...	**Activating Night service:**
Activate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Deactivating Night service:**
Deactivate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

If Night service is activated for an MSN, **Night service** is marked with ✓.

Individual handset settings

Your handset has default settings. You can change these settings individually.

Changing the display language

You can view the display texts in different languages.

	Open the menu.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Language OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The current language is checked ✓ (the default setting is English).
OK	Select a language and confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

i	◆ If you set the wrong language in error, press 7pqrs 2abc. Now select the correct language with and confirm with OK. ◆ When you change the display language the character set can change too, e.g. for Russian.

Activating/deactivating Auto Answer

If you have activated this function, when you get a call you can simply lift the handset out of its base or the charger without having to press the Talk key (the default setting is on).

	Open the menu.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Auto Answer OK	Confirm to deactivate or activate the function (✓ = On).
	Long press (back to idle status).

Changing the name of the base

The names "Base 1" to "Base 4" are assigned automatically. You can change the name of your base.

i	The name of the base is handset-specific, i.e. the base receives the name which was assigned by the handset. The same base can have different name on different handsets.

	Open the menu.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Select Base OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Edit	Select the base and press the display key.
	Enter a new name (up to 16-characters) (for inputting text see page 154).
Save	Now press the display key to confirm the setting.

Adjusting the loudspeaker volume

You can adjust the handsfree volume to five levels and the earpiece volume to three levels – even while an external call is in progress.

	Open the menu.
Audio Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Handset Volume OK	Confirm. You hear the current volume setting for handsfree talking.
	Set the volume for handsfree talking (1-5) in the input field.
	Scroll one line lower and set the earpiece volume (1–3).
Save	Press the display key to save the setting.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Ringer echo

In certain situations, the sound quality could be less than what you are used to. You can enhance the sound quality of the long ringer melodies (4–10).

	Open the menu.
Audio Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Ringer Echo OK	Confirm (✓ = activated).
	Long press (back to idle status).

Changing the ringer tone

i	Setting the ringer melody on the handset is only effective, if the **external ringer MT** is set instead of a ringer melody(page 114) for the incoming MSN of the handset.

A range of options is available:

Gigaset S1:

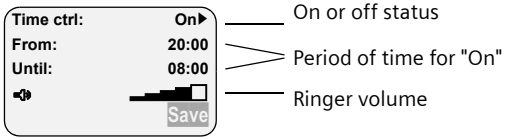
- Six volume levels:
  - Five volume levels (1–5; e.g. volume level 2 =),
  - "Crescendo" call (6; the volume increases with each ring =).
- Ten melodies (1–10; melodies 1–3 are the "classic ringer tones").

Gigaset SL1:

- Six volume levels:
  - Five volume levels (1–5; e.g. volume level 2 =),
  - "Crescendo" call (6; the volume increases with each ring =).
- Max. 26 melodies:
  - Max. 16 polyphonic melodies (polyphonic melodies must have first been saved using Sound Manager,page 107)
  - Ten melodies (1–10; melodies 1–3 are the "classic ringer tones").

Settings for external calls, time control and name announcement

Set the volume and melody depending on the type of ringing. You can also set the volume of a call to be dependent on the time it is received (e.g., nights quieter as during the day).

	Open the menu.
Audio Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Ringer Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Setting the melody and volume:
Ext. Calls OK	Confirm. You hear the current volume.
	Select the volume in the input field.
	If necessary, activate time control:
Time C.	Press the display key. 
	In the **Time ctrl:** line, select **On**.
	Scroll to the **From:** line and enter the beginning of the time period (4-digit format).

	Scroll to the **Until:** line and enter the end of the time period (4-digit format).
	Scroll to the next line and set the ringer volume for this time period.
Save	Press the display key to save the time control.
Save	Now press the display key to confirm the setting.
... then	
	Long press (back to idle status).

Individual settings for internal calls, wake-up and appointments

You can set the ringer individually for an internal call, wake-up call, or appointment. You can also set all calls the same.

	Open the menu.
Audio Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Ringer Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	**For internal calls:**
Internal Calls OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**For set appointments (page 96):**
Appointments OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**For a pre-set wake-up call (page 94):**
Alarm OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**To set all functions to ring the same:**
All OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
... then	
	Set the volume (1-6) in the input field.
	Scroll to the next line and select the ringer melody. The current melody rings, the digits at the end of the line indicate the current setting. Enter the melody (1-10).
Save	Press the display key to save the setting.
Yes	For the setting **All** press the display key again to confirm the prompt.
... then	
	Long press (back to idle status).

Activating/deactivating the ringer

All handsets ring when there is an incoming call. You can cancel the ringer on your handset before you answer a call or when the handset is in idle status; the ringer can be cancelled permanently or just for the current call.

Cancelling the ringer permanently:

*△	Press the star key and hold until the ringer cannot be heard any longer. The ringer is now **permanently** cancelled. The icon appears in the display.
	Re-activating the ringer:
*△	Press the star key and **hold**.

To cancel the ringer in **idle status**, press the *△ key and hold until the icon appears. The ringer cannot be re-activated while an external call is in progress.

Deactivating the ringer for the current call:

Silence	Press the display key.

Activating/deactivating the alert tone

When you activate and deactivate the ringer you can activate an alert tone. When you get a call, you will hear **a short tone** (beep) instead of the ring tone.

*△	Press and **hold** the star key and **within 3 seconds:**
Beep on	Press the display key. A call is now signalled by **one** brief alert tone. You will now see in the display.
	Deactivating the alert tone:
*△	Press the star key and **hold**. The ringer is activated again.

Sound Manager

On the MT:	SL1

You can use Sound Manager to record polyphonic melodies (max. length 4 sec.) or record using a data cable (max. 16 kb) (page 157). A maximum of 16 melodies can be stored.

	Open the menu.
Audio Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Sound Manager OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
<New Sound> OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
End	Press the display key or wait 4 seconds to end the recording. The recording is repeated automatically for you to check.
Save	Press the display key to save the recording.
Edit Entry	Enter name of the melody.
Save	Save name.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Play the melody, edit the entry.

	Open the menu.
Audio Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Sound Manager OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Select a melody.
either ...	**Play the melody:**
Play	Press the display key.
or ...	**Changing an entry:**
>☰	Press the display key.
	Scroll to the **Volume** line to change the volume.
	Scroll to the **Edit Entry** line to change the name.
	Scroll to the **View Entry** line to display the file names.
	Scroll to the **Delete Entry** line to delete the entry.
... then	
	Long press (back to idle status).

Vibration alarm

On the MT:	SL1

Incoming calls and other messages are signalled by a vibration. This setting is independent of ringer settings.

	Open the menu.
Audio Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Silent Alert OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).
	Long press (back to idle status).

Activating/deactivating advisory tones

Your handset uses 'advisory tones' to tell you about different activities and statuses. The following advisory tones can be activated and deactivated individually (the default setting is on).

- **Key click:** Every key press is confirmed
- **Acknowledge tones:**
  - Confirmation tone (rising tone sequence): at the end of an input/setting, when the handset is placed in the base and when a text message or a new entry arrives in the calls list or answering machine list (on Gigaset with integrated answering machine)
  - Error tone (a descending tone sequence): with incorrect inputs
  - End of menu tone: when scrolling at the end of a menu
- **Battery tone:** The batteries must be charged.

	Open the menu.
Audio Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Advisory Tones OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	In the **Key Tones:** line, activate or deactivate the key click.
	Scroll to the **Confirm.:** line to activate or deactivate the confirmation tones.
	Scroll to the **Battery:** line and choose **On**, **Off**, or **in Verb.**. The battery warning tone is activated or deactivated or only rings during a call.
Save	Press the display key to save the setting.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Resetting a handset to the factory setting

You can reset individual settings and changes you have made. This will not affect entries in the directory, the calls list, the email directory or the speed dial list, the handset's registration to the base and logos and melodies that you have loaded.

Press ☎ to cancel the reset.

	Open the menu.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Reset Handset OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Yes	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Factory settings of the handset

Base selection	"Best base"	page 21
Earpiece volume	1	page 103
Handsfree volume	3	page 103
Ringer volume	5	page 104
Time control for ringer	Deactivated	page 104
Ringer melody	1	page 104
Name announcement	Deactivated	page 104
Auto answer	Activated	page 102
Battery tone/Key click/Confirmation tone	Activated	page 108
Display language	country specific	page 102
Character set	standard	page 154
Alarm clock/appointment	Deactivated	page 94/ page 96
Appointment name	deleted	page 96
Logo	Deactivated	page 68
Last number redial list	empty	page 48
Room monitor/room monitor sensitivity	Deactivated/high	page 77

System settings

The abbreviations in brackets after the titles indicate the ISDN service concerned. Some services may only be used if they have been authorised by the network provider (there may be an extra charge).

All the settings for the base are made with a registered S 1 handset.

Changing the names for internal users

By factory default, all internal numbers are given the names **Int.11** , **Int.12** , etc., according to their numbering. You can change these entries to suit your individual needs.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Int.11	Select internal number, e.g. **Int.11** .
	Open the submenu.
Name OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Change the name and open the menu.
Save entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The name is now shown in the internal list, including when an internal call is made from this internal number.

i	Since names are saved in the base station, another name can be allocated to a handset when registering to a different base. This makes it possible to recognise which base the handset is currently connected to.

Setting up/deleting ISDN phone numbers (MSN)

Your ISDN connection offers you 2 simultaneously usable telephone lines (B channels). You can establish up to 10 separate phone numbers (MSN) on your base station.

Setting up an ISDN phone number (MSN) / changing the name

If you haven't saved all the phone numbers with the Getting started wizard (page 14), you can enter them now. **All phone numbers that are stored retrospectively are automatically assigned to all registered handsets.**

Each newly set up phone number automatically gets its own ringer melody, which can be changed to suit your individual requirements (page 114).

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Set up MSN OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Select MSN, e.g. **MSN1: Anna**.
	Open the submenu.
Edit entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter a name (up to 16 characters – optional) (for inputting text see page 154).
	Scroll to the line **<Number>** and enter the phone number.
	Open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Cancelling ISDN phone numbers (MSN)

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Set up MSN OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Select MSN, e.g. **MSN1: Anna**.
	Open the submenu.
Delete entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

i	If the MSN you have cancelled was the send MSN (page 113) of an internal user then a new send MSN (the MSN with the lowest ranked number) will automatically be assigned to this internal user.

Assigning a phone number (MSN)

You can assign certain individual phone numbers (MSN) to registered terminals. When doing this determine

- which phone number makes a registered terminal ring (receive MSN),
- under which number an internal user dials (send MSN).

Assigning a receive MSN

As supplied, a newly registered handset will ring whenever a phone number you have set up is dialled.

If you want to assign the handset certain specific receive MSN's:

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Int.11	Select internal number for the handset, e.g. **Int.11** .
	Open the submenu.
Receive MSN OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select and confirm MSN, e.g. **MSN1: Anna**.

Assigning a send MSN

When the phone is supplied no send MSN has been entered. The telephone exchange adds the outgoing MSN.

You can define one outgoing MSN per internal party. This MSN is shown to the person you call and the call is also charged to this MSN.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Int.11	Select internal number, e.g. **Int.11** .
	Open the submenu.
Send MSN OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select and confirm MSN, e.g. **MSN1: Anna**.

Setting up the list of outgoing MSN for the next call

You can set up your handset so that after pressing the Talk key or the handsfree key a list of all available outgoing MSNs is displayed.

By factory default, **MSN next call** is not activated.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The list of entered internal numbers is displayed.
Int.11 OK	Select internal number and confirm, e.g. **Int.11** .
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
MSN next call OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).
	Hold down (return to idle status).

Setting up a busy signal when the MSN is being used (Busy on Busy)

This setting allows callers to get a busy signal immediately when an external call is already being made on this MSN, independent of the setting **Call waiting**.

By factory default, the function is not set.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Busy on busy OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = set).

Assigning an MSN a ringer melody

Each incoming MSN is assigned a ringer melody when setting up. You can change this assignment for each incoming MSN individually. For a receive MSN you can:

- Select one of the available ringer melodies. This means that all handsets will use this ringer melody to indicate an incoming call to a receive MSN.
- Set **External ringer MT**. Then the handsets assigned to the receive MSN will use the ringer melody set on the handset for external calls(page 104).

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Set up MSN OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Select MSN, e.g. **MSN1: Anna**.
	Open the submenu.
Ringer Melody: 5 OK	Select melody and confirm, e.g. **Ringer Melody: 5** (✓ = activated).

Setting up rejecting for the entire MSN group

You can reject an external call not only on your handset, but for all members of an MSN group. Pressing REJECT will give the caller a busy signal instead of a ringing tone. The entire group will no longer be called. Someone using call waiting can also be rejected during a call. The call is added to the calls list.

By factory default, the function is not activated.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Reject all OK	Select the menu item and confirm. (✓ = activated)

Forwarding calls

Forwarding internal calls

i	◆ Only one forward destination can be selected for internal call forwarding. ◆ Only one single-stage call forwarding is supported: If you are forwarding to a party who has activated internal call forwarding himself, this will no longer work. The forwarded call will ring at the party you forwarded it to.

By factory default, internal call forwarding is deactivated.

Setting up the forwarding destination

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Forward. base OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Forward. dest. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Int.11	Select internal number, e.g. . **Int.11** (✓ = On).

Activating/deactivating internal call forwarding
Precondition: Internal call forwarding can only be activated if the forward destination is set up.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Int. call forw. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
either ...	**Activate:**
Activate? OK	Confirm.
or ...	**Deactivate:**
Deactivate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Defining the number of rings
When ring delay is used, the number of rings before the call is forwarded must be defined. Between 0 (= immediate call forwarding) and 9 rings can be set. There are 5 seconds between rings.
The factory default setting is 0 rings (= immediate call forwarding).

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Forward. base OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
No. of rings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter the number of rings and confirm.
	Hold down (return to idle status).

Forwarding external calls – CF (Call Forwarding)

For each receive MSN you can store a destination number for each of the following conditions:

Immediately – On busy – On no reply

i	◆ If call forwarding is sent to the base station (internal) (page 119), the condition **On busy** is not available. ◆ All three conditions can be activated at the same time. ◆ If Night service was set up for an incoming MSN (page 98), external call forwarding cannot be set up or changed for this incoming MSN.

Set up external call transfers are entered in a list. Active call transfers are identified in this list.
When the phone is supplied external call forwarding is not set.

Setting up the forwarding destination

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Ext. call forw. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91). The list of set up call transfers is displayed.
	Press the display key to open the menu.
New entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select the receive MSN and confirm, e.g. **MSN1: Anna**.
Immediately OK	Select the condition and confirm, e.g. **Immediately**. You will be notified if you have selected an MSN for which another internal user has already set up call forwarding. You can either return using **BACK** to select another setting or use **NEXT** to continue.
	Enter number and open the menu.
Save entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
YES	Confirm to set up call forwarding.

Activating/deactivating external call forwarding

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Ext. call forw. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
	Select call forwarding, e.g. **MSN1 to 22222**.
	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Activate:**
Activate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Deactivate:**
Deactivate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm. You will be notified if you have selected call forwarding that another internal user has already set up. You can either return using **BACK** to select another setting or use **NEXT** to continue.

Editing an entry

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Ext. call forw. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
	Select call forwarding, e.g. **MSN1 to 22222**.
	Open the submenu.
Edit entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm. You will be notified if you have selected call forwarding that another internal user has already set up. You can either return using **BACK** to select another setting or use **NEXT** to continue.
	Enter the new number and open the menu.
Save entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
YES	Confirm to set up call forwarding.

Deleting external call forwarding

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Ext. call forw. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
	Select call forwarding, e.g. **MSN1 to 22222**.
	Open the submenu.
Delete entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm. You will be notified if you have selected call forwarding that another internal user has already set up. You can either return using **BACK** to select another setting or use **NEXT** to continue.

Switching external call forwarding internal/external

Your ISDN connection offers you 2 simultaneously usable telephone lines (B channels).

You can set up your telephone so that:

- the call forwarding is done at the telephone exchange (external), so that your second ISDN line remains free.
- the call forwarding is done in your base (internal), so that both ISDN lines are used. Any resulting connection charges will be charged to you.

By factory default, **Forward. netw.** is activated.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	
Forward. base OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = set).
or ...	
Forward. netw. OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = set).

Pre-assigning the call deflection destination – CD (Call Deflection)

The call forwarding destination for incoming calls are pre-set here. This "call to" number is offered as a pre-set when forwarding manually (page 32).

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Forward. dest. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter "call to" number and confirm.
Save entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Setting up automatic call forwarding when not reaching a handset

If your handset is out of the radio range of the base station, the battery is flat, or the handset has been deactivated, a call will be forwarded to one of the external phone numbers you specify (e.g. a mobile phone).

Preconditions:

- You have **exclusively** assigned the handset its own incoming MSN (page 112). This MSN must not be assigned as the incoming MSN for any other device, not even the ISDN bus!
- Call forwarding can only be set up for one incoming MSN on the base.

By factory default, automatic call forwarding is not set up.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Auto.forwarding OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Select call fowarding line, e.g. **MSN1: Anna**.
	Open the submenu.
	Enter "call to" number and confirm.
Save entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm. Automatic call forwarding is activated (✓ = on).

The line set up for automatic call forwarding is marked in the list of set-up call forwarding lines.

Setting up an internal group call group

You can make a group call from any handset to all other registered internal party (page 23).

In the basic settings, all registered parties of device type "telephone" or "neutral" are set up in the group call group.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Confirm.
Int.11	Select internal number, e.g. **Int.11** .

	Open the submenu.
Hunt group OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

Setting up ring delay

Ring delay can be used to individually set up a party per incoming MSN to ring later. During this ring delay time, the handset can take the call using the function "**Accept?**" without hearing a ring. The ring delay time is given in rings. There are 5 seconds between rings.

The factory default setting is 0 rings (= not activated).

Take into account the reaction time of the answering machine when making this setting (factory default: **Automatic 2/4**). If the set ring delay is longer than the setting for an active answering machine, the phone will not ring, because the answering machine will answer it first.

For each programmed MSN, at least one party must be able to be called immediately. Therefore, a party set up for ring delay will be called immediately if he is the only one on this incoming MSN, or no one else can be reached on this incoming MSN.

Picking up a call during ring delay see page 25.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Int.11	Select internal number, e.g. **Int.11** .
	Open the submenu.
Ring delay OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select incoming MSN, e.g. **MSN11: Anna**, and confirm.
OK	**No. of rings** required.

Activating/deactivating call waiting – CW

This function can be set up separately for each user. When call waiting is activated the caller will hear the ringing tone if you are already making a call. This call is announced both acoustically, and visually on your handset screen.
When call waiting is deactivated, the caller will hear the ringing tone if you are already making a call **and** other phones are assigned to this MSN.
When call waiting is deactivated, the caller will hear the busy tone if you are already making a call **and** yours is the only phone assigned to this MSN.

The function is activated when the phone is supplied. For call waiting with an external call see page 33.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Int.11	Select internal number, e.g. **Int.11** .
	Open the submenu.
Call waiting OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

Setting an external/internal enquiry call

Your ISDN connection offers you 2 simultaneously usable telephone lines (B channels).

You can set up your telephone so that:

- when an enquiry call is made during an external call to another external party, the "hold" is done at the telephone exchange so that your second ISDN line remains free.
- when an enquiry call is made during an external call to another external party, the "hold" is done in your base, and both ISDN lines are used.

By factory default, **Ext. enq. call** is activated.

i	If **Int. enq. call** is set and the second B-channel is being used, the "Hold" takes place automatically in the telephone exchange.

Initiating a enquiry call see page 29 or page 30.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	**Set Int. enq. call:**
Int. enq. call OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).
or ...	**Ext. enq. call is to be set:**
Ext. enq. call OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

Setting up the waiting melody

An external party hears the set waiting melody when the connection is on hold in the base (internal) (page 122). An external party whose connection is on hold in the telephone exchange (external), and an internal party who is on hold, will not hear a waiting melody.

The following settings can be chosen:

Internal	The party on hold hears the waiting melody of the base.
Off	When the waiting melody is deactivated, a setting cannot be made.

By factory default, **Internal** is activated.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
System settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Music on hold OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Internal OK	Select the setting and confirm, e.g. **Internal** (✓ = on).

Activate/deactivate Call beats data

On the base:	SX205isdn	SX255isdn	SX303isdn	SX353isdn

Using **Call beats data** you can set if a call is rejected or signalled during data transmission.

Your ISDN connection offers you 2 simultaneously usable telephone lines (B channels). Both channels are used at the same time to transmit data.

- **Call beats data** off (factory setting):
  Calls during data transmission are rejected. The caller hears the busy signal.
- **Call beats data** on:
  When there are calls during data transmission, the data connection is automatically reduced to one B channel and the call is signalled.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Call beats data OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = On).

Changing the long distance prefix

Long distance prefixes are the first few digits required when dialling another city (national) or to another country (international). In Germany, the factory default is:

0	For connections to other towns (national)
00	For connections abroad (international)

In other countries, different long distance prefixes could be used. In this case you need to change this setting.

Otherwise, you wouldn't be able to make some calls, such as ringbacks, from the call list.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Lg.-dist. code OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
National : 0	Select type of long distance prefix, e.g. **National : 0**.
	Open the submenu.
Change number OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

	Enter a new or changed long distance prefix and open the menu.
Save entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Entering or changing the country code:

On the base:	SX303isdn	SX353isdn

Phone numbers transferred from the GSM network always contain the international country code, even when dialling within a country (e.g., +49 for Germany, +33 for France, +39 for Italy, or +43 for Austria).

Therefore, a special setting for the country code is necessary if you have received a call from the GSM network, this call was transferred into the directory or the calls list, and you would like to call back from the directory or the calls list via the ISDN network.

Default settings: country code of each country (e.g., +49 in Germany).

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Lg.-dist. code OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Code :	Select.
	Open the submenu.
Change number OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter the country code and open the menu.
Save entry OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Configuring the answering machine in the network for fast access

On the base:	CX100isdn	SX100isdn	SX205isdn	CX203isdn	SX303isdn

Precondition: You can only use the answering machine of your network provider in the network if you have **applied** for it with your network provider.

As soon as the phone number of the answering machine has been entered in the network, you can use fast access. You can dial the answering machine in the network directly by holding down the key 1.

The answering machine in the network of the Deutschen Telekom is the network mailbox.

The network mailbox is pre-set for fast access as the factory default for devices without AM in Germany, i.e., the phone number of the network mailbox is entered. The phone number of the network-mailbox is freecall 0800 330 2424.

Entering/deleting a phone number in the network.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
System settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Network Mailb. OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The phone number appears in the display if it has already been stored.
	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Enter or change an entry:**
Change number OK	Confirm.
	Enter or change the phone number of the answering machine in the network and open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Confirm.
or ...	**Delete a number:**
Delete number OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

This setting is now valid for all registered handsets and the base.

Calling an answering machine in the network

Press 1 **and hold**. This connects you directly to the answering machine in the network. If you now press the handsfree key, you can 'open listen' to the announcement of the answering machine in the network and operate the answering machine in the network easily and conveniently.

Displaying/playing back a message from the answering machine in the network

When a message arrives for you, you get a call from the answering machine in the network. On the screen, the number, e.g., for the network mailbox 0800 330 2424, is displayed if you have applied for Calling Line Identification. If you accept the call, the new messages are played back. If you do not accept the call, the number of the answering machine in the network will be stored in the list of missed calls and the message key flashes.

Restoring the factory setting

You can select which type of reset should be performed:

Operational – All MSNs and access code are deleted and the AM PIN (on Gigaset with integrated answering machine) is set to 0000. The authorisations are reset to "dial and answer".

Reset all – All functions are reset to their factory defaults. The system PIN is reset to "0000". All entries (calls list, charges) are deleted.

i	The following applies to both functions: Before resetting, deactivate all active call transfers! The handsets are still registered.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
System settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Spec. function OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Factory setting OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	**Restore the functionality:**
Operational OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Restore factory settings:**
Reset all OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Checking the status

The status of the following settings can be checked:

- Callback
- Unknown call
- Call forwarding
- External connections
- AM1, AM2, AM3

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Status OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The status list is displayed (✓ = activated).

Checking the software version

You can check the version of the software for the base:

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
System settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Spec. function OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
SW version OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Operating when connected to a PABX

i	Pay attention to the special features for SMS on PABX systems (page 70).

Access code

Precondition: If your phone is connected to a PABX you may have – depending on the PABX – to enter an access code (outside line code) for external calls when getting started the first time. See the operating instructions for your PABX. You can enter a one to four-digit access code.

For incoming calls, the access code is automatically placed in front of the caller's phone number in the display and in the call lists, and likewise when copied to the directory. The saved phone number can then be dialled directly from the calls list (page 50)

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
System settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Access code OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter access code and open the menu.
Save entry OK	Confirm.

i	For manual dialling and entering directory, emergency and direct dial numbers you must also enter the access code.

Activating/deactivating call transfer – ECT (Explicit Call Transfer)

Preconditions:

- The service is supported by the exchange of your PABX.
- With some ISDN PABX systems, your two parties are not connected together, when you press the end call key during a call transfer (page 33). In this case you need to activate this function. To do this, please refer to the operating instructions of your PABX.

By factory default, this function is deactivated.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
ISDN settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Transfer(ECT) OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

i	If you activate this function, it will automatically be switched to the **Ext. enq. call** (= in the telephone exchange) (page 29).

Dialling options

The KEYPAD function allows you to control certain services by entering sequences of characters and digits.

You should set the KEYPAD function if your telephone is connected to an ISDN PABX or to an exchange (e.g. Centrex), which is controlled by means of KEYPAD protocol. The digits/characters **0–9, *, #** are sent as keypad information elements. Please inquire of your service provider about which information and codes you can transmit.

If your telephone is integrated in a Centrex system, the following performance features can be used.

Calling Name Identification (CNI)	When you receive calls from other CENTREX subscribers, the caller's number and name are displayed on the screen.
Message Waiting Indication (MWI)	The display key ✉ is offered on Comfort handsets if new calls appear in the calls list. Calling up the calls list deletes the display key ✉.
CENTREX call	A CENTREX call is announced acoustically in the same way as an internal call.

Setting options

You ca switch between the settings **Standard dial** (factory setting), **Auto keypad** and **Dial * and #**.

Standard dial

Once **Standard dial** has been activated, ***** and **#** are not transmitted during dialling, and if ***** and **#** are entered it is not possible to switch to the keypad.

Auto keypad

Once ***** or **#** has been entered, this setting automatically transfers ringing during dialling to the keypad. This automatic switchover is needed for giving commands to the exchange or PABX.

Dial * and #

Once **Dial * and #** has been activated, the ***** and **#** characters are transmitted during dialling as commands to the exchange or PABX.

Regardless of the setting options above, **after dialling** or during the conversation, the phone switches automatically to tone dialling (DTMF), for instance for remote control of an answering machine.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
System settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Spec. function OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Dial properties OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Standard dial OK	Select the setting and confirm, e.g. **Standard dial** (✓ = activated).

Activating/deactivating the keypad during a call

In addition to the ongoing settings described above, you can also switch over temporarily to the keypad.

The setting is only applicable to the current external call and is automatically deactivated after the call is ended.

	Open the menu.
either ...	**Activate the keypad:**
Keypad on? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter the keypad code.
or ...	**Deactivate the keypad:**
Keypad off? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Activating the keypad for the next connection

All dialling characters (**0–9**, *****, **#**) will be sent as a string of keypad characters with the next connection (dial and call). In the connection status, the keypad is retained and is not automatically switched over to tone dialling (DTMF).

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Call preparat. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Temp. keypad OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

Operating with other devices

Defining device type

On the base:	SX205isdn	SX255isdn	SX303isdn	SX353isdn

If your base offers the option of connecting an analogue terminal, you must set the device type (see operating instructions for the base).

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Confirm.
Intern 21	Select internal user, e.g. **Intern 21**.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Device type OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Fax OK	Select the device type desired and confirm, e.g. **Fax**

i	When changing a setting from one device type not requiring an incoming MSN to a device type requiring an incoming MSN, all MSNs programmed in the system are used as active incoming MSN for this internal user.

Making a call with devices on an analogue connection (TAE connection)

On the base:	SX205isdn	SX255isdn	SX303isdn	SX353isdn

Telephones with tone dialling (DTMF) can be used on analogue connections. Telephones with DP (pulse dialling) are not supported.

i	Information about telephoning with devices on an analogue connection can be found in the operating instructions of your base.

Activating/deactivating automatic line seizure

The exchange line is occupied when the handset is lifted if automatic line seizure is activated. Normal internal dialling is thus no longer possible Using the ® key, an internal call can be made via an internal enquiry call.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Confirm.
Intern 21	Select internal user, e.g. **Intern 21**.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Auto. seizure OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Make calls externally

Autom. line seizure is not active

0+

Autom. line seizure is active

Internal dialling

Autom. line seizure is not active

Make calls internally using the GAP handset

Autom. line seizure is not active

✆ [keypad] or INT [keypad]

Group call to all internal users

Autom. line seizure is not active

✆ [*] / for GAP INT [*]

A call on call waiting

You hear the call waiting tone during an external call.

either ...

Call is disconnected, wait for the ring ✆

or ...

Ⓡ Caller 1 is put on hold.

Changing to the waiting caller – Toggling

Ⓡ	Caller 1 is put on hold.
Ⓡ	Caller 2 is put on hold, etc.

Making an external enquiry call

Ⓡ [0+] [keypad]	
Ⓡ	Swap between callers, if necessary.

Making an internal enquiry call

Ⓡ [keypad]	Make an internal enquiry call.
Ⓡ	Swap between callers, if necessary.

Transferring the call before/after answering

either ...	Transferring before answering:
R	
	Hold down (return to idle status).
or ...	**Transferring after answering:**
R	Transfer the call after answering.
	Make an enquiry call.
	Hold down (return to idle status).

i	Information about telephoning with devices on an analogue connection can be found in the operating instructions of your base.

Activating/deactivating repeater mode

You can increase the range of your handsets with the Gigaset Repeater. You can operate up to six repeaters on your base. To ensure the repeater is installed correctly, repeater mode must be activated on the base.

You can use this function to activate and deactivate repeater mode.

By factory default, this repeater capability is deactivated.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
System settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Spec. function OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Repeater OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
NEXT	Press the display key to save the setting. The handset goes off briefly (✓ = activated).

Operating the answering machine directly

On the base:	CX150isdn	SX150isdn	CX253isdn	SX255isdn	SX353isdn

Your ISDN telephone has three answering machines (AM1, AM2, AM3), each of which you can operate and set independently. You can operate the answering machines either directly via a registered handset (via the menu) or by remote control (internal or external call to the answering machine, see the operating instructions of the base).

Which answering machine you can operate directly using your handset depends on the assignment of the receive MSN's:

There is no MSN assigned to the answering machines (factory setting):

- AM1 answers all calls.
- Each answering machine can be set, operated and played back from each handset/terminal.

One or more MSN's are assigned to each answering machine:

Each answering machine can only be set and played back using handsets/terminals with the same receive MSN.

Exception: If a receive MSN is assigned exclusively to one answering machine, and not to any other handset/terminal, then this answering machine can be operated by all internal users.

i	If an answering machine is currently being used by one user (directly or by remote control), then no other user can access the answering machine during this time.

The date and time of arrival of each message is logged if you have previously set this function (page 94).

You can hide answering machines you do not wish to use, see page 82.

Definitions of terms used below:

Message	Message that a caller leaves on the answering machine.
Memos	"Spoken notes" that you can record on the answering machine for members of your family or office colleagues, for example.
AM mode	Answer and record or announce only.
Answer and record mode	The caller hears an announcement and may then leave a message.
Announce only mode	The caller hears the announcement but cannot leave a message.

Selecting an answering machine

	Open the menu.
Answering mach. OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
AM1 OK	If necessary, select answering machine and confirm, e.g. **AM1** .
OK	If AM lock is set (page 85): enter the answering machine PIN and confirm.

The list of answering machines **AM1** , **etc.,** is also opened if you press and hold the number key 1. The list only contains the answering machines set to be shown on the handset. If only one answering machine can be reached via the handset, or only one answering machine is set to be shown, the list is skipped.

Activating/deactivating the answering machine

You can only activate/deactivate an answering machine when time control is not active (page 85).

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

either ...	**Activate the answering machine:**
Activate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Deactivate the answering machine:**
Deactivate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

When the answering machine is activated the remaining memory in % is displayed on the screen.

Which AM mode the answering machine assumes after activation (answer and record mode or announce only mode) depends on the announcement selected (page 138).

You can only activate an answering machine in answer and record mode if there is memory still available. If the remaining memory is less than 60 seconds, you will be prompted to delete old messages. If the remaining memory is less than 10 seconds the answering machine is started in announce only mode.

If the answering machine assigned to a handset is activated, the ∞ icon is shown on the screen. The ∞ flashes if a recording is in progress.

Selecting announce only and AM mode

You can activate **Announcement 1** , **Announcement 2** or **Announcem. only** for each answering machine. As supplied, the three announcements already contain pre-recorded announcements. You can delete the pre-recorded announcement and record your own announcement.

When you select an announcement you also determine in which AM mode the answering machine is to run (page 136).

- **Announcement 1** , **Announcement 2:** Recording mode.
- **Announcem. only:** Announce only mode

In answer and record mode a **Concl.announcem** is given automatically at the end of a recording providing you have recorded a concluding announcement.

When the phone is supplied **Announcement 1** is selected. The **Concl.announcem** contains nothing.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Announcements OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Announcement 2	Select announcement, e.g. **Announcement 2** (✓ = set).
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Select OK	Confirm. The announcement set previously is deactivated automatically.

i	The answering machine switches automatically from answer and record mode to announce only mode when the memory is full. As soon as memory space is made available (e.g. because you have deleted some messages) the answering machine automatically switches back to answer and record mode.

Recording/changing announcements

You can record the following announcements: **Announcement 1 , Announcement 2, Announcem. only** and **Concl.announcem**.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Announcements OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Announcement 2	Select announcement, e.g. **Announcement 2** (✓ = currently activated).
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Record OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
START	Press the display key to start recording.
	Say the announcement message.
STOP	Press the display key to end the recording. The announcement is repeated for you to check.

Recording is automatically terminated if:

- you pause for more than 8 seconds when recording your announcement
- the memory is full. Delete old messages or announcements you no longer require.

The announcement will not be stored if you press the end call key during the recording or repeat playback.

Playing back/deleting announcements

Only recorded announcements can be deleted. The pre-recorded announcement cannot be deleted.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Announcements OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Announcement 2	Select announcement, e.g. **Announcement 2** (✓ = is activated).
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
either ...	**Play back the announcement:**
Play back OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Delete the announcement:**
Delete OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
YES	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.

Recording memos

Memos are "spoken notes" recorded, for example, for members of your family. A memo is played back, saved and deleted in the same way as a message. If there is a new memo, the message key ✉ flashes on all handsets assigned to the answering machine.

You can also record memos when the answering machine is deactivated.

When the memory is full, and when there are pauses in the recording longer than 8 seconds, the recording of the memo is cancelled automatically.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Memos OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Record memo OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
START	Press the display key to start recording.
	Say the memo message.
STOP	Press the display key to end the recording.

To cancel the recording, press the display key BACK.

Two-way recording

You can make a two-way recording of a call. The two-way recording can then be played back or deleted like a message.

During a call:

	Open the menu.
Record OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
AM1 OK	Select an answering machine and confirm, e.g. **AM1** . The two-way recording starts at once.
STOP	Press the display key to end the two-way recording.

i	The two-way recording is also ended when the call ends or when the memory is full. You should inform the person you are speaking to in advance that you are making a two-way recording.

Picking up a call during answering machine operation

You can pick up a call, even if the answering machine has already switched itself on (the ∞ icon flashes on the screen), or your announcement is still running, or the caller is already leaving a message. When you pick up the call the recording stops.

Preconditions:

- To pick up an answering machine call, the minimum authorisation "Answer only" is required (page 92).
- The same receive MSN is assigned to both the answering machine and the handset picking up the call (page 81).
- Automatic listen in is not activated on any other handset (page 88).

	Automatic call pick up is activated (see page 89, factory default):
	Press the talk or handsfree key. You pick up the call.
	Automatic pickup is deactivated:
	Press the talk or handsfree key.
either ...	
OP.LIST	Press the display key to screen the call. The caller cannot hear you.
or ...	
ACCEPT	Press the display key to pick up the call.

In order to call another external party while the answering machine is recording a call you must deactivate the automatic pickup (page 89).

Playing messages

New messages are displayed on the handset by the flashing message key ✉. Pressing the messages key ✉ gives you direct access to the new messages.

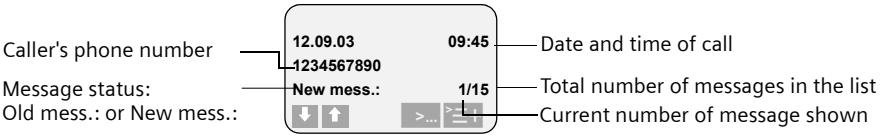
You can also open the lists of new and old messages via the menu.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Messages	OK	Confirm.

Playback starts with the oldest message. When all the messages have been played back you will be asked whether you wish to delete the messages.

The following is shown on the screen for each message:



If automatic pause is activated the answering machine switches to pause mode after playing back a message. Press the display key >..., to continue playback.

Jumping to the next or previous message during playback

▷	Go to the next message.
△	Repeat the last 5 seconds of the current message. If less than 5 seconds have elapsed, the current message is played back from the beginning.
△ △	Jump to the previous message.

Switching to pause mode during playback, ending pause mode

▷		Switch to pause mode.
Continue	OK	Confirm. Continue playback.

Returning a call during playback

You can call back a caller immediately while a message is being played.
Precondition: The caller's number has been identified (page 24).
During playback:

	Press the display key to open the submenu.
either ...	**Call back:**
Call back OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Call back using the network provider's phone number:**
NET list OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Select the network provider's number and confirm.

Playing a message to another caller

During an external call you can play messages from the answering machine to the person you are calling.
Precondition: The same receive MSN is assigned to the handset and the answering machine.
During the call:

	Press the display key to open the menu.
Play message OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
AM1 OK	If necessary, select answering machine and confirm, e.g.**AM1** .
OK	If AM lock is set (page 85): enter the answering machine PIN and confirm. Information about the oldest message is displayed on the screen. The message is **not** played back.
	Select message and open the submenu.
Playback OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The playback starts. The other party can hear the message being played.
	End playback:
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Exit OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The playback stops. You can speak to the caller again.

Playing back memos

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

Memos OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Play memo OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Jump to the next or previous memo.

Setting the playback speed

You can set the playback speed for messgaes/memos to four levels, **Slow**, **Normal speed**, **Fast** or **Very fast**. When the phone is supplied **Normal speed** is set for all answering machines.

During playback:

	Press display key to open menu.
Speed OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Fast OK	Select the speed level and confirm, e.g. **Fast** (✓ = set).

Playback continues at the new speed. All subsequent messages/memos are played back at this speed until you make another change.

Deleting messages/memos

You can delete messages or memos individually or all together. Only messages and memos that have been listened to for at least 3 seconds can be deleted. These recordings are then described as old.

Deleting single messages/memos

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

either ...	**Delete a single message:**
Messages OK	Confirm. Message playback begins.
All messages OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Select message.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Delete message OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The current message is deleted.

or ...	Delete a single memo:
Memos OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
All memos OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Select memo.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Delete curr.memo OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The current memo is deleted.

Deleting all old messages/memos

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 137).

either ...	Delete all old messages:
Messages OK	Confirm. Message playback begins.
All messages OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Del.old messages OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
YES	Confirm.
or ...	**Delete all old memos:**
Memos OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
All memos OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Delete old memos OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
YES	Confirm.

Marking an old message or memo as "new"

You can mark messages/memos you have already played back as "new". This will display this message/memo on the handset as a new entry by flashing the message key ✉ or by text in the display.

Pressing the messages key ✉ gives you direct access to the message/memo once more.

During playback:

	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Status to 'new' OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The current recording is given the status "new".

If other recordings are available, playback continues.

Adding a number to the directory

While a message is being played back you can display the caller's phone number and store it in the directory.

Precondition: The caller's number has been identified.

During playback:

	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save number OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Enter name.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Store OK	Confirm.

Operating with a gate telephone

On the base:	SX205isdn	SX255isdn	SX303isdn	SX353isdn

Assigning internal users to the gate telephone call group

If you have set up a gate telephone, all internal users registered on the base will be assigned to the gate telephone call group. You can change the assignment.

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Confirm.
Int.11	Select internal user, e.g. **Intern 11**.
	Open the submenu.
Door call grp. OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = On).

Making calls with the gate telephone

Call from the gate telephone

In a call with the gate telephone, the following performance features are not available:

- Putting a call on hold
- Making an enquiry call from a call with the gate telephone
- Toggling a user on the gate telephone
- Conference with a user on the gate telephone
- Forwarding or transferring a call from the gate telephone

The gate telephone calls internal users for 20 seconds. If call forwarding for the gate telephone is set up externally, the call time is extended to 60 seconds.

	Press the talk key. You are connected to the gate telephone. The message **Door** appears in the display.
... then	
	Press end call key.
or ...	
OP DOOR	Press the display key to activate the door opener. The door opener is activated. As confirmation, you receive the screen display **Door is opening**. The connection to the gate telephone is automatically ended after the door opens.

Call waiting for the gate telephone

The gate telephone calls internal users for 20 seconds. If call forwarding for the gate telephone is set up externally, the call time is extended to 60 seconds.

Accept call waiting

Press the display key ACCEPT. You pick up the call on call waiting.

If the interrupted call is an internal call, this connection is interrupted by accepting the call on call waiting.

If the interrupted call is an external call, this call is put on hold when accepting the call on call waiting. Both parties are shown on the display, the current one is marked.

Changing parties

If the interrupted call is an internal call, you can change parties.

	End your current call. The waiting call becomes a normal call.
	Press the talk key to answer the call.

Internal calls with the gate telephone

You can call the gate telephone internally (page 22).

Forwarding the gate telephone externally

On the base:	SX205isdn	SX255isdn	SX303isdn	SX353isdn

The calls to the gate telephone can be forwarded to an external phone number. The internal users of the gate telephone call group will continue to be called even with external call forwarding set up.

The setting for the call forwarding destination for external call forwarding either in the exchange or in your base (page 119) also affects the call forwarding for the gate telephone.

Entering or changing the destination number for external call forwarding

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Confirm.
Int.21	Select the set-up gate telephone (**Int.21** or **Int.22**).
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Türrufumleitung OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Press the display key to display the destination number. If a destination number has not been recorded, the entry **<empty>** is shown.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Change number OK	Confirm.
	Enter a new or changed destination number.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry OK	Confirm.

Deleting the destination number for external call forwarding

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Confirm.
Intern 21	Select the set-up gate telephone (**Intern 21** or **Intern 22**).
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Forw. door call OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Press the display key to display the destination number.
Delete number OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Activating/deactivating call forwarding

	Open the menu.
Base Settings OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Einstellungen OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 91).
Setup user OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device OK	Confirm.
Intern 21	Select the set-up gate telephone (**Intern 21** or **Intern 22**).
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Türrufumleitung OK	Select and confirm to display the destination number.
	Press the display key to open the submenu.
either ...	**Activate call forwarding:**
Activate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Deactivate call forwarding:**
Deactivate? OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Appendix

Care

Wipe the handset with a **damp** cloth (use no solvent) or an antistatic cloth. **Never** use a dry cloth. This can cause static.

Contact with liquid ⚠

If the handset should come into contact with liquid, **on no account switch the device on. Remove all batteries immediately.**

Allow the liquid to drain out of the device, and then pat all parts of the device dry.

Keep the handset with the batteries removed in a warm, dry place for at least 72 hours. In many cases, you will then be able to use it again.

Questions and Answers

If you have any questions about the use of your phone, you can contact us 24/7 at **www.my-siemens.com/custeromercare**. You will find the most frequently asked questions and answers below.

What has happened when ...	Possible cause	Possible solution
... the display is blank?	The handset is not switched on. The batteries are flat.	Press the end call key **for around 2 sec.** Charge or replace the batteries (page 9).
... the handset fails to respond to a key press?	The keypad lock is activated.	Press the hash key **for around 2 seconds** to deactivate the lock (page 10).
... **Base** or **Base Search** flashes in the display?	The handset is outside the range of the base. The handset is not registered. The base is not switched on.	Move the handset nearer to the base. Register the handset (see page 9 and page 20). Check the power connector at the base.
... the handset does not ring?	The ringer is switched off. Internal call forwarding is set to 0 rings (= immediate call forwarding). Night service is active.	Activate the ringer of the handset (page 106). Increase the number of rings for the internal call forwarding (page 116). Deactivate Night service (page 98).
... the call units/charges are not displayed?	There are no metering pulses. Factor per unit = 0.	Ask your network provider to transmit the metering pulses. Set the factor per unit (page 73).
... the incoming call number is not displayed even though CLIP is set?	Calling Line Identification is blocked.	The caller must ask his network provider to enable the identification of his number (CLI).
... the calls list does not indicate a time for a message?	Date/time are not set.	Set the date/time (page 94).

What has happened when ...	Possible cause	Possible solution
... the answering machine says "PIN is incorrect" during remote operation?	The entered system PIN is incorrect or still set to 0000.	Enter the system PIN again or set a PIN that is different from 0000 (page 91).
... the answering machine does not record any messages or has automatically switched over to "announce only"?	Its memory is full.	Delete old messages Play back new messages and delete.
... the handset does not ring after the ISDN number (MSN) has been set up?	The area prefix has been stored with the MSN.	Store MSN **without** area prefix (page 111).
... You don't hear anything?	The key was pressed – the microphone has been muted.	Press to return to the call.
... You can't dial a phone number any longer?	The long distance prefix has changed. The telephone is blocked.	Check the long distance prefix and correct it (page 124). Check the status display, unlock the telephone if necessary (page 10).
... there are **no incoming calls**?	Call forwarding **Immediately** has been activated. The MSN has not been assigned to the internal user. The authorisation **Internal only** is set.	Deactivate call forwarding **Immediately**(page 116). Determine the receive MSN (page 112). Change the authorisation (page 92).
... during **call forwarding** the **forwarding conditions** are not displayed?	Internal call forwarding is activated.	Activate external call forwarding (page 116). Apply to have this activated by the network provider.
... the telephone also rings for fax-PC calls?	The phone number is in the phone number list of the base telephone.	Delete the corresponding phone number (MSN) in the list (page 112).
... the display shows **no call charges**?	The call charge display is not set or this performance feature is not enabled by the network provider.	Activate the call charge display (page 73). Apply for the performance feature "charge transmission" from the network provider.
... you cannot access the **answering machine**?	The answering machine lock has been activated.	Enter answering machine PIN (page 85).
... you are unable to record any new information or **announcements**?	There is insufficient remaining memory.	Delete old messages/information (page 143). Reduce the quality of the recordings (page 83).
... you have a **PABX** and, after dialling, the wrong connection or no connection is made?	You have entered the wrong prefix or no prefix.	Check and correct the prefix (page 129).
... **the handset** does not ring as set?	There is a different setting for the ringer melody for the MSN.	Change the ringer tone melody (page 114).
... it is not possible to access the **answering machine** from the **handset**?	The handset is not assigned to the receive MSN for the answering machine.	Check assignment (page 81).
... some of the **ISDN functions** do not work as stated?	The ISDN function has not been enabled.	Check with your network provider.

What has happened when ...	Possible cause	Possible solution
... another **telephone** on the So bus **does not ring**?	The same MSN was assigned to the telephones. One of the telephones also has **internal** call forwarding activated.	Deactivate internal call forwarding or set external call forwarding (page 115).
... the caller hears the phone ringing although the MSN is busy?	The MSN was saved in devices also used on the ISDN connection.	The phone number which is supposed to be used for call protection during a call should be deleted from the list of phone numbers for each individual additional device.
... the handset does not receive an SMS as a text message?	You are not registered with both SMS centres.	Register with SMS centres (page 57).

Service (Customer Care)

You have access to straightforward support concerning with technical aspects of your device and how to operate it through our Online Support on the Internet:

www.my-siemens.com/customercare

or you can refer to the section "Questions and Answers" on page 150.

If you have any trouble with the equipment, please contact the **Siemens telephone service**:

United Kingdom	0 87 05 33 44 11
Ireland	18 50 77 72 77

The Siemens Service is only available to deal with device faults only. Your specialist dealer will be able to help you with any questions about operating your device.

Please address any questions about the DSL or cable connection to your network provider.

Specifications

Recommended batteries

Nickel-metal-hydride (NiMH):

- Sanyo Twicell 700
- Sanyo Twicell 650
- Panasonic 700 mAh
- GP 700 mAh
- YDT AAA SUPER 700
- VARTA PhonePower AAA 700 mAh

Handset operating times/charging times

Capacity (mAh)	Standby time (hours)	Calling time (hours)	Charging time (hours)
700	approx. 170 (7 days)	approx. 13	approx. 5

These operating and charging times apply only when using the recommended batteries.

General Specifications

Feature	Value
DECT standard	is supported
GAP standard	is supported
No. of channels	60 duplex channels
Radio frequency range	1880–1900 MHz
Duplex method	Time multiplex, 10 ms frame length
Channel grid	1728 kHz
Bit rate	1152 kbit/s
Modulation	GFSK
Language code	32 kbit/s
Transmission power	10 mW, average power per channel
Range	up to 300 m outdoors, up to 50 m indoors
Environmental conditions for operation	+5 °C to +45 °C; 20 % to 75 % humidity
Dialling mode	DTMF (tone dialling)/DP (dial pulsing)
Dimensions/Handset	Gigaset S1: approx. 146 x 55 x 27 mm (L × W × H) Gigaset SL1: approx. 143 x 118 x 50 mm (L x H x W)
Weight	Gigaset S1: Handset with battery cells approx. 131 g Gigaset SL1: Handset with battery cells: approx. 81 g

Character set chart

Standard characters

Press the relevant key repeatedly or hold it down:

	1 x	2 x	3 x	4 x	5 x	6 x	7 x	8 x	9 x	10 x	11 x	12 x	13 x	14 x
1	Space	1	€	£	$	¥	¤							
2 abc	a	b	c	2	ä	á	à	â	ã	ç				
3 def	d	e	f	3	ë	é	è	ê						
4 ghi	g	h	i	4	ï	í	ì	î						
5 jkl	j	k	l	5										
6 mno	m	n	o	6	ö	ñ	ó	ò	ô	õ				
7 pqrs	p	q	r	s	7	ß								
8 tuv	t	u	v	8	ü	ú	ù	û						
9 wxyz	w	x	y	z	9	ÿ	ý	æ	ø	å				
0 +	.	,	?	!	0	+	-	:	¿	¡	"	'	;	_
*	Abc--> abc	abc --> 123	*	/	(	)	<	=	>	%				
#	#	@	\	&	§									

Creating and editing text (without predictive text)

You can create and edit text in a number of ways:

- The cursor is controlled with ◁ ▷ △ ▽.
- Characters (to the left of the cursor) are deleted with C.
- Characters are added to the left of the cursor (page 12).
- To switch from upper case (first letter written in upper case, all other letters in lower case) to lower case, press the * key before you key in the letter. Pressing the * key again switches from lower case letters to digits. Press again to return to upper case letters.
- The first letter of the name of directory entries is automatically capitalised, followed by lower case letters.
- When you press a key **and hold it**, the characters of that key appear in the **bottom display line** and are highlighted one after the other. When you release the key the highlighted character is inserted into the input field.

  You can see in the display whether upper case, lower case or digits are selected:
  - "A" or "a" appears on the bottom display line when you make an entry in the directory.
  - "Abc", "abc" or "123" appears at the top right of the screen when a text message is entered.

Order of directory entries

As a rule, entries in the directory are arranged in alphabetical order, although blank spaces and numerals (digits) take first priority. The **order in which entries occur** is as follows:

1. Space (shown here as ␣)
2. Digits (0–9)
3. Letters (alphabetical)
4. Other characters

If you want to circumvent the alphabetical order of the entries in the directory, insert a space before the name. This entry then goes to the first position (example: "␣Carla"). You can also number the entries with digits (e.g. "1Jane", "2Mary", "3John").

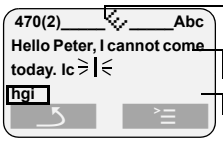
Names prefixed with a star (e.g. "*Jane") appear at the end of the directory.

Predictive text

The EATONI predictive text helps you to write:

- SMS
- Names in the directory,
- Names in the speed dial list,
- Names in the email directory.

Each key between [0+] and [9wxyz] is assigned **several letters and characters** which all appear on a **selection line** immediately beneath the text area (above the display icons) as soon as you press a key. When you are entering letters, the letter you are **most probably** looking for is **greyed**. This letter is at the beginning of the selection line and is transferred to the text area.



The EATONI predictive text function is activated.

Text of the message

Selection line

If this letter is the one you want, confirm it by pressing the next key. If the letter selected by the predictive text is not the one you want, then press the **hash key** [#] repeatedly until the required letter appears greyed in the display line and is transferred to the text area.

Key function when predictive text is activated

[*]	Press the star key briefly **for about 2 seconds**: Change from mode "abc" to "Abc", from "Abc" to "123" and from "123" to "abc" (also applicable to the letters following).
[#]	Goes to the next letter in the selection list (greyed).

Deactivating/activating predictive text

Predictive text is activated and deactivated according to specific functions. Even if you have deactivated predictive text when entering a name in the directory for SL1 for instance, it is still available for writing text messages.

Precondition: You are in a text input field (SMS, name in the directory, speed dial list or email directory).

	Open the menu.
Predictive Text OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = On).
	Press the "end call" key **briefly** to return to the text area. Now enter your text.

PC interface

On the MT:	SL1

The SL 1 handset can be connected to your computer using a Siemens data cable (page 168). Your computer can communicate with your Gigaset SL 1 using the program "Siemens Data Suite" (download free of charge at http:\\www.my-siemens.com\mysiemens) and can access the following parameters and lists of the handset:

Reading out parameters

- SW version
- Type
- Manufacturer code

Read/write access to

- the directory
- the email directory
- the network provider list
- the list of appointments
- the last number redial list

Read/write access to other parameters

- Ringer settings
- Volume settings
- Loading screen savers
- Loading melodies
- Make phone calls and answer calls

Data transmission

Large quantities of data are transferred between the handset and an external device with a few functions. In this case, the handset switches to the data transmission mode, **Data Transfer** is displayed on the screen. In this mode, the keyboard cannot be used to enter data and incoming calls are ignored.

In the following cases, the handset switches to the data transmission mode:

- Read/write access to the directory
- Read/write access to the email directory
- Read/write access to the network provider list
- Read/write access to the list of appointments
- Read/write access to the last number redial list
- Loading screen savers
- Loading melodies

If an error occurs during transfer, the handset switches to idle status:

Make phone calls and answer calls

If you select a number from an external device or accept a call from there, the handset behaves exactly as if you had executed these functions on the handset.

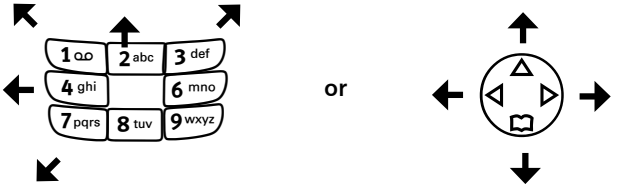
Game "Balloon Shooter"

On the MT:	SL1

Try to hit as many balloon as possible.

	Open the menu.
Add. Features OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Balloon Shooter OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	**Begin the game:**
Start	Press the display key.
or ...	**Further options:**
	Press display key to open menu.

To move the crosshairs, press:



To shoot the balloon, press the 5 jkl key.

Guarantee certificate (United Kingdom)

Without prejudice to any claim the user (customer) may have in relation to the dealer or retailer, the customer shall be granted a manufacturer's Guarantee under the conditions set out below:

- In the case of new devices and their components exhibiting defects resulting from manufacturing and/or material faults within 24 months of purchase, Siemens shall, at its own option and free of charge, either replace the device with another device reflecting the current state of the art, or repair the said device. In respect of parts subject to wear and tear (including but not limited to, batteries, keypads, casing), this warranty shall be valid for six months from the date of purchase.
- This Guarantee shall be invalid if the device defect is attributable to improper treatment and/or failure to comply with information contained in the user manuals.
- This Guarantee shall not apply to or extend to services performed by the authorised dealer or the customer themselves (e.g. installation, configuration, software downloads). User manuals and any software supplied on a separate data medium shall be excluded from the Guarantee.
- The purchase receipt, together with the date of purchase, shall be required as evidence for invoking the Guarantee. Claims under the Guarantee must be submitted within two months of the Guarantee default becoming evident.
- Ownership of devices or components replaced by and returned to Siemens shall vest in Siemens.
- This Guarantee shall apply to new devices purchased in the European Union. The Guarantee is issued by Siemens plc, Siemens House, Oldbury, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 8FZ.
- Any other claims resulting out of or in connection with the device shall be excluded from this Guarantee. Nothing in this Guarantee shall attempt to limit or exclude a Customers Statutory Rights, nor the manufacturer's liability for death or personal injury resulting from its negligence.
- The duration of the Guarantee shall not be extended by services rendered under the terms of the Guarantee.
- Insofar as no Guarantee default exists, Siemens reserves the right to charge the customer for replacement or repair.
- The above provisions does not imply a change in the burden of proof to the detriment of the customer.

To invoke this Guarantee, please contact the Siemens telephone service. The relevant number is to be found in the accompanying user guide.

Guarantee certificate (Ireland)

Scope

- This equipment guarantee applies to end users ("customers"). This guarantee does not in any way affect the customer's statutory rights.
- The guarantee applies to the supplied devices and all their components but not to their installation or configuration or to the services provided by the dealer. Manuals and any software supplied on a separate data medium are excluded from the guarantee. This guarantee does not apply to decorative covers or any other personalised

parts or software not included in the scope of supply. The guarantee also does not apply to decorative top or bottom shells for special editions.

- The guarantee provides for devices or components that, despite proper care and use, have demonstrably developed defects due to faulty workmanship and/or faulty materials to be replaced or repaired at our discretion free of charge. The guarantee does not cover normal wear and tear. Alternatively, we reserve the right to replace the defective device with a successor model or reimburse the original purchase price on return of the defective device. Our decision is final. Any legal claims are excluded.
- Claims under the guarantee cannot be made if the defect or damage was caused by improper care or use. Improper care or use includes the following:
  - Opening the device (this is classed as third-party intervention)
  - Manipulating components on the printed circuit board
  - Manipulating the software
  - Defects or damage caused by dropping, breaking, lightning or ingress of moisture. This also applies if defects or damage were caused by mechanical, chemical, radio interference or thermal factors (e.g. microwave, sauna, etc.).
  - Repairs or other work done by persons not authorised by us.
  - Devices fitted with accessories not authorised by Siemens.
- Any further claims due to damage are excluded, such as damage arising outside the device, provided this was not due to gross negligence and/or intent on our part.
- Claims under the guarantee must be made as soon as the defect is noticed.
- A till receipt showing the date of purchase must be presented as proof. Each claim under the guarantee is accepted with the express reservation that subsequent investigations confirm the validity of the claim.
- Any devices or components that are replaced become our property.
- The costs of materials and labour will be borne by us, but not the costs of transport, postage or freight.
- We are entitled, at our discretion, to make technical changes (such as firmware updates) beyond repair or replacement in order to upgrade the device to the latest state of the art. There is no additional charge to the customer for this work. Our decision is final. Any legal claims are excluded.
- The guarantee is valid in the country of purchase. It applies only if the device is operated in the relevant geographical area in accordance with the information on the packaging and in the operating instructions.
- Any further claims are excluded. Siemens is not liable in any circumstances for downtime, loss of profits, loss of data or loss of any other information. The customer alone is responsible for safeguarding such data and information.
- Changes to this guarantee require prior approval by Siemens in writing.

Guarantee period

- The guarantee applies in countries in the EU from 1 January 2002 for a period of 24 months.
- In all other countries the guarantee period shall be the relevant minimum statutory guarantee period, but no longer than 24 months.
- The guarantee period starts on the day of purchase by the customer.
- A successful claim under the guarantee does not extend the guarantee period.
- Work under the guarantee is handled by our Customer Care Centres.

Menu Tree

Main menu

Instead of scrolling to locate a menu function, you can also select a menu function faster by opening the menu and keying in the digit combination ("shortcut").

Example: 5 jkl 2 abc 4 ghi for "set ringer for the alarm clock".

With the telephone in the **idle status**, press (open menu):

1	SMS	Write message			
		Inbox 2/5			
		Outbox 2			
3	Add. Features	3-1	Room Monitor		
		3-2	Walk and Talk		
4	Calendar/ Clock	4-1	Set Appoints.		
		4-2	Alarm Clock		
		4-3	Missed Dates		
		4-4	Date/Time		
5	Audio Settings	5-1	Handset Volume		
		5-2	Ringer Settings	5-2-1	Ext. Calls
				5-2-2	Internal Calls
				5-2-3	Appointments
				5-2-4	Alarm
				5-2-5	All
		5-3	Advisory Tones		
		5-4	Ringer Echo		
6	Call Charges	Cost overview			
		Type of calcul.		Units cent.off.	
				Costs cent.off.	
				No rate	
				Rate --.--	
				Rate ----	
		Last charge			
7	H/Set Settings	7-1	Auto Answer		
		7-2	Language		
		7-3	Register H/Set	*(List)*	
		7-4	Select Base	7-4-1	Base 1
				7-4-…	[to]
				7-4-4	Base 4
				7-4-5	Best Base
		7-5	Screen Picture		
		7-6	Reset Handset		
8	Base Settings	→ *For continuation see submenu* **Base Settings** *(page 162)*			

9	Answer Machine	AM1
		AM2
		AM3

→ **For continuation see submenu Answering machine (page 165)**

Submenu "Base Settings"

To begin: With the handset in **idle status** press ◉ **Base Settings** OK or ◉ 8 tuv.

Status	Callback	✔ = On		
	Withhold no.			
	Call forwarding			
	Ext.occupations			
	AM1 on			
	AM2 on			
	AM3 on			
Missed calls	**(phone number list) -> Calls list menu (page 50)**			
Accepted calls	**(phone number list) -> Calls list menu (page 50)**			
Call preparat.	Temp.withhold			
	MSN next call	(select MSN)		
	Temp. keypad			
	Canc. call park			
Ext. call forw.	*List of external forwarding*	New entry	*MSN list*	Immediately
				On busy *(only for call forwarding in the telephone exchange, (see page 119)*
				On no reply
		Activate?	Deactivate? – *if call forwarding is activated*	
		Edit entry	Immediately	
			On busy *(only for call forwarding in the exchange, (see page 119)*	
			On no reply	
		Delete entry		
Int. call forw.	Activate?	or Deactivate? – if call forwarding is activated		
	Forward. dest.	*List of Internal users*		
	No. of rings	(enter the number)		
Night service	*MSN list*	Activate?	*or* Deactivate? *– if Night service is activated*	
		Forward. dest.	External	*Number editor*
			Internal	*List of handsets*
			Answering mach.	*List of handsets*

		Start time		
		End time		
		Sat/Sun all day		
Settings	Security	Change PIN	(Enter PIN)	
		Authorisation	*List of internal users*	Unrestricted
				Incoming only
				Internal only
		Emergency nos.	*Emergency numbers (preconfigured)*	
			Emergency numbers (personal)	Change number
				Delete number
				Display number
	Setup user	Setup device	*List of internal numbers* →	*Device type specific submenu*
		De-reg. device	*List of Internal users*	*Select device*
	System settings	Music on hold	Internal	
			Off	
			Off	
		Date/time	Set time	
			24 hours	✓ = On
			12 hours	
			Date DD.MM	
			Date MM.DD	
		Access code		
		AM auto. pickup		
		Network Mailb.	*Phone number is displayed*	Change number
				Delete number
		Spec. function	Factory setting	Operational
				Reset all
			Dial properties	Standard dial
				Auto keypad
				Dial * and #
			Repeater	
			SW version	
		Ext.room monit.	*(Destination number display)*	Change number
				Delete number
	ISDN settings	Set up MSN	*List of all set up MSNs*	Edit entry
				Ringer melody
				Delete entry
				Display entry
		Withhold no.		
		Forward. dest.	*(Enter phone number)*	

			Lg.-dist. code	National : 0	Change number
				Internat.: 00	Delete number
				Code :	Change number
			Int. enq. call		
			Ext. enq. call		
			Transfer(ECT)		
			Forward. base		
			Forward. netw.		
			Reject all		
			Busy on busy		
			Auto.forwarding	*List of all set up MSNs*	
			Call beats data		
		Service centres	(List of SMS service centres)	Edit entry	
				Serv.centre on?or Serv.centre off?	
				Delete entry	
Installation					
PC-Service					

Submenu "Answer Machine"

To begin: With the handset in **idle status** press ◁▷ **Answer Machine** OK or ◁▷ 9wxyz, select an answering machine, e.g., **AM1** , and confirm with OK.

- Messages
  - *List of all messages AMx*
    - Continue
    - Delete message
    - Call back
    - NET list
    - Repeat
    - Del.old messages
    - Display
    - Status to 'new'
    - Save number
    - Speed
      - Slow
      - Normal speed
      - Fast
      - Very fast
    - Exit
- Memos
  - All memos / **New memos**
    - *Memo list AMx*
      - Continue
      - Delete curr.memo
      - Repeat
      - Delete old memos
      - Status to 'new'
      - Speed
        - Slow
        - Normal speed
        - Fast
        - Very fast
      - Exit
  - Record memo
- Announcements
  - Announcement 1 / Announcement 2 / Announcem. only
    - Select
    - Record
    - Play back
    - Delete
  - Concl.announcem
    - Record
    - Play back
    - Delete

Settings	Message/Memo	Message length	1 minute		
			2 minutes		
			3 minutes		
			Maximum		
		Time stamp			
	Time control	Activate?	or Deactivate? – if time control is activated		
		Mon - Fri	*List of four adjustable time periods*	Select ann.	Announcement 1
					Announcement 2
					Announcem. only
					AM off
				Start time	
		Saturday / Sunday	As for Mon-Fri		
			Ann. 1 24h		
			Ann. 2 24h		
			Ann. only 24h		
			AM off		
	No. of rings	Automatic 2/4			
		1 ring tone			
		to			
		9 ring tone			
	Automatic pause				
	Remote options	Remote control			
		Remote delete			
	Change AM-PIN				
	AM lock				
	AM quality	High quality			
		Long recording			
	Aut. listen in	Activate?	or Deactivate? – if activated		
		Select HS			
	SMS notificat.	Activate?	or Deactivate? – if activated		
		Change number			
		Delete number			
Activate?	or Deactivate? – if currently activated				

Directory key and speed dial list key

Press the directory key ⊙ or the speed dial list key ⊙, select an entry with ⊙ and press ⊙ to open the required list**.** The following **menu functions** are available:

Display Number	
Edit Entry	
Delete Entry	
VIP Entry	For the directory only (s)
Copy and Edit	For the directory only (s)
Copy Entry	
Delete List	
Copy List	
Available Memory	

Accessories

MP Accessory

MP accessories of the S55 mobile phone can also be used.

- **Carrying cord**
  The carrying cord can be used to carry the handset or wear it around your neck.
- **Table charger EDC-510** (Order No. L36880-N5601-A101)
  The table charger allows convenient charging of the telephone as well as an additional battery.
- **Mobile handsfree set HHS-510** (Order No. L36880-N5601-A108)
  with PTT key (Push To Talk).

With the mobile handsfree set you can make a call while keeping your hands free.

In addition, conversations can be heard on the handset.

DCA-500 data cable

To connect the telephone to the serial RS232 port of your computer.

All accessories and batteries are available from your mobile phone retailer. Or you can order direct online from the my-siemens Online Shop: www.my-siemens.de/shop or call: 0180 5333 225 (0.12 Euro/min.).

The Online Shop also has the latest product information.

SIEMENS Original Accessories

Only use original accessories. This will avoid possible damage to health and property and ensure that all relevant regulations are being observed.

Index

A

Accepting a call 23
Access code 129
Accessories 168
  DCA-500 data cable 168
  Handsfree set 168
  Table charger 168
Accessories handsfree set 168
Acknowledge tones 108
Activate
  Advisory tones 108
  Alarm clock 94
  Alert tone 106
  Answer 102
  Answering machine 137
  Appointment 96
  Call waiting 122
  Handset 10
  Keypad 131
  Logo (SMS) 69
  Night service 101
  Predictive text 156
  Repeater 135
  Ringer 106
  Room monitor 77
  Walk and Talk mode 80
Activating 10
  Automatic pause, answering machine 84
  Listening in on the answering machine 88
  Pickup from AM 89
  SMS notification 89
  Voice announcement, answering machine 83
Activating automatic pause 84
Activating Identify caller 28
Activating/deactivating advisory tones 108
Activating/deactivating keypad protection 10
Adjusting the loudspeaker volume . . 103
Alarm clock
  Activate 94
  Deactivate 95
  Setting 94
Alert tone
  Activate 106
  Deactivate 106
AM1 136
AM3 136
Analogue
  Making a call with analogue devices 133
Anniversary
  Clear 97
  Missed 97
  Saving 42
Anniversary reminder call 43
Announce only (answering machine) 136
Announcement (answering machine) 136
Answer 102
  Activate 102
  Deactivate 102
Answer and record 136
Answer and record, answering machine 136
Answering machine 2, 136
  Activate 137
  Activating automatic pause 84
  Activating/deactivating lock 85
  AM in the network 125
  Assigning a receive MSN 81
  Automatic listen in 88
  Automatic pickup 89
  Changing an announcement 138
  Charge saving function 83
  Connecting an analogue AM 132
  Deactivate 137
  Defining PIN 85
  Delete announcement 139
  Deleting memos 143
  Deleting messages 143
  Hide 16, 82
  Memos 136
  Messages 136
  Notification of SMS 89
  Operating 136
  Phone numbers in the directory . . . 145
  Play back messages 141

Playback speed. 143
Playing back an announcement . . 139
Playing back memos. 143
Record memo 139
Recording an announcement 138
Returning a call during playback . . 142
Selecting 137
Setting 81
Setting recording quality 83
Setting recording time 83
Setting the time control 85
Show. 16, 82
Specifying the rings before AM starts. 83
Spoken date/time. 83
Two-way recording. 140
Answering machine see also Network mailbox
Answering machine/mail box
Configuring for fast access 125
Viewing message. 126
Appointment
Activate. 96
Cancelling 97
Clear 97
Missed. 97
Setting 96
Setting the ringer. 105
Area code 60
Area prefix, see area code
Assign
Phone number (MSN). 112
Receive MSN 112
Ringer melody for MSN. 114
Send MSN 113
Assigning the ringer melody 114
Automatic
Answer 102
Last number redial 12, 48
Line seizure 133

B

Balloon Shooter. 158
Barging in, joining a call 32
Base
Change 21
Changing the name 103
Preparing to use. 14
Setting 15
Setting up. 7
Batteries
Charging 9
Charging status display 1, 2, 9
Display 9
Inserting. 9
Recommended 7, 153
Battery charging status display 9
Battery tone. 108
Belt clip 10
Busy on Busy 114

C

Call
Accept 1, 2, 23
Continuing 35
Ending 1, 2, 22
Forward 32
Parking. 35
Rejecting 26
Setting the ringer 105
Transfer 129
Transfer internally (connect) 22
Transferring 33
Two-way recording 140
Call costs, see Charges
Call forwarding
Activate/deactivate internally. 116
Defining number of rings 116
External 117
Gate telephone. 148
Switching. 119
Call group for gate telephone 146
Call Hold 34
Call PickUp. 25
Call waiting
Activate 122
Deactivate 122
Callback
Accept 27
Activating. 27
Checking the 27
Clear 27
When the call is not answered 27
When the number is busy 27
Call-by-Call numbers 36, 72
Calling
External 22
Internal 22

Calling back a caller 51
Calling back an SMS sender 66
Calling back from calls list 51
Calling data 124
Calling Line Identification
  Withholding 23
Calls
  Forwarding 115
  Setting (external) 104
Calls list 50
  Delete an entry 52
  Opening the 50
Cancel
  Function 1, 2
  Process 12
Cancel function 1, 2
Care of the telephone 150
Carrying clip 10
CCBS 27
CCNR 27
CD 119
CF 116
Change
  Announcement for answering machine 138
  Base name 103
  Display language 102
  Email address 46
  Long distance prefix 124
  Loudspeaker volume 103
  Name for internal user 110
  Ringer 104
  SMS in the outgoing message list . . 61
  System PIN 91
  User name for voice pattern 45
  Volume in handsfree mode 25
Changing a user name (voice pattern) 45
Changing the display language 102
Changing the long distance prefix . . 124
Changing the name of the base 103
Changing the system PIN 91
Character set chart 154
Charge status of the batteries 1, 2
Charges for the last call 75
Charging the batteries 9
Check
  Software version 128
  Status of the settings 127
Check status 127
Checking the software version 128
CLIP 23
CLIR 23
CNIP 41
COLP 23
COLR 23
Conference call 32
Confirmation tone 10, 12, 108
Control key 1, 2, 11
Copying 39
Copying an email address 47
Correcting wrong inputs 12
Cost overview
  Clear 75
  View 75
Cost, see Charges
Cursor, see cursor
CW 33, 122

D

Data cable 157
Data transmission 157
  Answering a call 124
Date and time 94
Date setting 16, 94
Date/time 16
DCA-500 data cable 168
Deactivate
  Advisory tones 108
  Alarm clock 95
  Alert tone 106
  Answer 102
  Answering machine 137
  Appointment call 97
  Appointment, cancelling 97
  Call waiting 122
  Handset 10
  Keypad 131
  Listening in on the answering machine 88
  Logo (SMS) 69
  Night service 101
  Notification of SMS on AM 89
  Pickup on AM 89
  Predictive text 156
  Repeater 135
  Ringer 106
  Room monitor 79

Voice announcement, answering machine 83
Wake-up call 95
Walk and Talk mode 80
Deactivate SMS send centre 56
Default settings
Handset 109
Restore 127
Defining authorisation 92
Defining device type 132
Delete
Anniversary 97
Announcement for answering machine 139
Appointment 97
Characters 12
Cost overview 75
Directory entry 40
Email address 47
Email directory 47
Entry in speed dial list 40
ISDN phone numbers 112
Memos (answering machine) 143
Messages (answering machine) . . 143
SMS entry 60
SMS incoming message list 65
SMS outgoing message list 61
Voice patterns 45
Delete key 12
De-registering
From SMS centre 57
Handset 21
Device type
Setting 17
Devices
Making a call with analogue devices 133
Dialling
Cancel 22
With the directory 38
With the speed dial list 38
Dialling emergency numbers 93
Dialling pause
Enter 1, 2
Directory 36
Adding telephone number to the directory 41
Adding the phone number of an SMS message sender 67
Copying an entry 39
Delete an entry 40
Dialling 38
Display and edit an entry 38
Key 167
Marking an entry as VIP 40
Opening the 1, 2, 11
Order of entries 155
Phone numbers from SMS text 67
Selecting a phone number 41, 145
Selecting a telephone number from the directory 41
Send 42
Send an entry to a handset 42
Storing a number 37
Use to input telephone number 41
Display
12/24 hour display 94
Call charges 73
Call duration 72
Caller's phone number 24
Changing language 102
Cost overview 75
Display keys 11
In idle status 13
Memory 47
Missed anniversaries 97
Missed appointments 97
Network mailbox message 126
Phone number (CLI/CLIP) 23
Removing protective film 9
Display keys 1, 2
Displaying call charges 73
Displaying the call duration 72
Door call forwarding 149

E

Earpiece mode 1, 2, 25
EATONI (predictive text) 58, 155
ECT 33, 129
Email address
Changing 46
Clear 47
Copying 47
Saving 46
Viewing 46
Email directory 46
Clear 47
Opening the 12

Emergency numbers 92
Emoticon, see SMS
Enable
SMS send centre 56
End call key. 1, 2, 22
Enquiry call
External. 29
Internal 30
Setting 122
Enter
Dialling pause 1, 2
MSN 17
Entry (directory)
Clear 40
Display and edit 38
Find and dial 38
Error message, see SMS
Error tone 12, 108
Errors when
Receiving an SMS. 71
Sending an SMS. 70
Escape key 12
Exit
Call 1, 2, 22

F

Fast access 125
Answering machine/mail box 125
Finding an MSN 16
For access code, see
Forwarding a text message 65
Forwarding calls 115

G

Game
Balloon Shooter 158
Gate telephone
Call group 146
Forwarding 148
Making calls 146
Getting started wizard. 14
Answering machine 16
Device type 17
Launching 15
MSN 16, 17
PABX. 19
Receive MSN 18
Send MSN 18
Group call to internal users 23

H

Handset
Activate 1, 2, 10
As room monitor
(Walk and Talk mode) 80
Belt clip 10
Brief overview 1, 2
Call 22
Change for best reception 21
Change to another base 21
Charging time 153
Deactivate 1, 2, 10
Default settings 109
De-register 21
GAP 134
Idle status 13
List 11
Muting. 29
Operating. 11
Operating time 153
Preparing to use 9
Register on another base. 21
Registering 20
Restore factory settings. 109
Settings (individual) 102
Transferring a call 33
Use as room monitor 76
Using several 76
Walk and Talk mode 79
Handset charging times 153
Handset idle status 13
Handsfree 25
Activate/deactivate 25
Adjust volume 13, 25
Handsfree key 1, 2
Handsfree set 168
Hash key 1, 2
Hearing aids 7
Hide answering machine 16, 82
Hold the line 34

I

Incoming message list (SMS) 58, 63
Clear 65
Opening the. 64
Initiate dialling. 1, 2
Initiate enquiry call 2
Input language (SMS) 58
Inserting the batteries 9

Internal
Call with a gate telephone 147
Enquiry calls 30
Link up 32
Making calls. 22
Internal user, changing name. 110
ISDN phone numbers (MSN)
Clear 112
Setting up 111

K

Key 1 (answering machine) 1, 2
Key click 108
Key press (confirmation tone) 108
Keypad 131
Activate 131
Deactivate 131
Keys
Control key 1, 2, 11
Delete key 12
Directory key 167
Display keys 1, 2, 11
End call key 1, 2
Escape key 12
Handsfree key 1, 2
Hash key 1, 2
Key 1 (answering machine) 1, 2
Last number redial key 12
Menu key. 12
Menu+ key. 12
Message key 1, 2
OK key. 12
On/Off key 1, 2
Recall key. 1, 2
Speed dial list key. 1, 2, 167
Star key 1, 2
Talk key 1, 2, 22

L

Last number redial 1, 2
Automatic 48
Delete list 49
Key 12
Manually 48
Last number redial key. 12
Last number redial list 48
Launching the Getting started wizard . 15
Line authorisation 92
Linking, see SMS
Liquid, contact with 150
List
Delete last number redial list 49
Email directory 46
Handsets 11
Opening 49
Speed dial list 36
Listening in on the answering machine 88
Locking, activating/deactivating keypad protection 10
Logo, see SMS
Loudspeaker volume 103

M

Making calls
Answering a call 23, 25
External 22
Handsfree. 25
Identify caller 28
Making an external call 22
Making an internal call 22
Rejecting a call 26
To several users 29
With the gate telephone 146
Manual last number redial 48
Medical appliances. 7
Melody
Polyphonic 107
Melody (ringer tone) 104
Memory
Answering machine 138
Listen 47
SMS 57
Memos, see Answering Machine
Menu
Back one menu level 12
End tone. 108
Key. 12
Menu management 11
Opening the 1, 2, 11
Tree 161
Menu Tree 161
Menu+ key. 12
Message key 1, 2
Open list. 64
Opening lists 49
Messages, see Answering Machine
Microphone 1, 2

Missed
Anniversary 97
Appointment 97
Move cursor 11
MP Accessory 168
MSN
Assigning the ringer melody 114
Enter 17
Finding 16
Receive MSN 18
Send MSN 18
Muting the handset 29

N
Navigating the input field 1, 2
Navigation in the input field 1, 2
Network provider (numbers list) 36
Night service 98
Activate 101
Deactivate 101
Entering the start and end time . . 100
Notes (spoken) see Memo
Number, see Phone number or Entry

O
OK key 12
On/Off key 1, 2
Open
Battery compartment 9
Calls list 50
Directory 1, 2, 11
Email directory 12
Internal list 1, 2
Menu 1, 2, 11
SMS attachment 68
SMS incoming message list 64
Open the internal list 1, 2
Opening an attachment, see SMS
Opening the battery compartment . . . 9
Operating time
Of the handset 153
Operating time for handset
In room monitor mode 76
In Walk and Talk mode 79
Order in directory 155
Outgoing message list 58, 60

P
PABX
Enter access code 19, 129
Handset Service 129
Text messages to the PABX 70
Parking
Call 35
PC interface 157
Pickup
On answering machine 89
Play back
Announcement for answering machine 139
Voice patterns 44
Playback speed
Answering machine 143
Polyphonic melodies 107
Predictive text 62, 155
Activate/deactivate 156
Prefix, see area code
Preparing the telephone
Handset 9
Pre-setting the call forwarding destination 119
PTT key (Push To Talk) 168
Putting a call on hold 34

Q
Questions and answers 150

R
Reading an SMS entry 60
Recall key 1, 2
Receive MSN
Assigning 112
Assigning for answering machine . . 81
Setting 18
Receiving an SMS 53, 63
Record
Announcement for answering machine 138
Call 140
Memo for answering machine 139
Voice patterns 43
Recording quality
Answering machine 84
Recording time
Answering machine 84

Registering
Handsets 20
SMS centre 57
Registering/de-registering with an SMS centre 57
Rejecting
Call 26
Entire MSN group 115
Removing protective film (display) 9
Repeater
Activate 135
Deactivate 135
Repeater, see
Replying to a text message 65
Reserving a line 26
Reset, see Factory settings
Restoring factory settings
Handset 109
Return to idle state 2
Ring delay 25
Setting up 121
Ringer
Activate 106
Changing 104
Deactivate 106
Set volume 104
Setting a melody 104
Time control for volume 104
Ringer on/off 2
Room monitor 76
Activate 77
Deactivate 79
Deactivating from an external phone 79
Setting the noise level 77
Using in Walk and Talk mode 80

S

Safety precautions 7
Security settings 91
Select option (menu) 11
Selecting a menu entry 11
Send
Directory entry to a handset 42
Directory to a handset 42
SMS 53, 58, 59
SMS in the outgoing message list 61
Send an e-mail, see SMS
Send centre, see SMS
Send MSN
Assigning 113
Defining 26
Setting 18
Setting up the list 113
Service provider 53
Set
Authorisation 92
Recording quality 84
Recording time 84
Send MSN 26
Set time by 16, 94
Setting 81
Alarm clock 94
AM playback speed 143
Appointment 96
Base 15
Date 16, 94
Display language 102
Enquiry call 122
External calls 104
Forward destination 99
Handset (individual) 102
Loudspeaker volume 103
Melody 104
Name announcement 104
Noise level in room monitor mode 77
Receive MSN 18
Ringer for appointment 105
Ringer for call 105
Ringer for wake-up call 105
Ringer melody 104
Ringer volume 104
Send MSN 18
System 110
Time 16, 94
Time control 104
Time control, answering machine . . 85
Volume 104
Walk and Talk mode 79
Setting the forward destination 99
Setting the name announcement . . . 104
Setting the noise level (room monitor) 77
Setting up
Busy signal 114
Group call group 120

ISDN phone numbers 111
Rejecting for the MSN group. 115
Ring delay 121
Wait melody 123
Setting up a group call group 120
Setting up the busy signal 114
Setting up the charge calculation 73
Settings
Check status 127
Checking the software version . . . 128
Short Message Service, see SMS
Shortcut 161
Show answering machine 82
Signal strength 1, 2
Signal tone, see Advisory tones
SMS 53
Activate send centre 56
Activating a logo 69
Calling back message sender 66
Clear 60
Copying an email address. 61
Deactivating a logo 69
Deactivating send centre 56
Delete incoming message list 65
Deleting the outgoing message list . 61
Editing in the outgoing messages list 61
Emoticon. 62
Entering e-mail address 62
Errors when receiving 71
Errors when sending 70
Forward 65
Incoming message list 63
Input language 58
Installing a logo 69
Installing a ringer tone 69
Linking 58
Managing SMS service centres 54
Opening an attachment 68
Opening the incoming message list 64
Outgoing message list 60
Phone numbers from SMS text 67
Phone numbers in the directory . . . 67
Read 60
Receiving 53, 63
Reply to. 65
Saving 59
Self-help with error messages. 71
Send 53, 58, 59
Send centre 53
Send e-mail 63
Sending as an e-mail. 62
Sending messages in the outgoing message list 61
Sending to a PABX 70
Storage capacity 57
Text templates 61
Writing. 58
SMS centres, managing phone numbers. 55
SMS notification
From answering machine 89
Sound Manager 107
Specifications 153
Speed dial list 36
Delete a single entry 40
Dialling 38
Edit a single entry. 38
Storing a number 37
View a single entry 38
Speed dial list key 1, 2
Standard characters 154
Star key 1, 2
Storage capacity, see SMS
Store entry (network mailbox) 126
Storing
Anniversary 42
Email address 46
Phone number in the speed dial list 37
SMS 59
Telephone number in the directory 37
Switch off, see Deactivate
Switching off an appointment alarm 97
System settings 110

T

Table charger 168
Talk key 1, 2, 22
Telephone
Care 150
Contact with liquid 150
Telephone number
Adding to the directory 41
Assigning (MSN) 112
Display caller's (CLIP). 23

Enter number of network mailbox 126
Finding your own 16
From the SMS text into the directory 67
Input from directory 41
Into the directory (answering machine) 145
Into the directory (SMS) 67
Managing numbers for SMS centres 55
Pick from directory 41
Storing in the directory 37
Storing in the speed dial list 37
Withhold identification 24
Text area (empty), see SMS
Text message, see SMS
Text templates, see SMS
Time control
Ringer volume 104
Setting 104
Time control, answering machine . . . 85
Toggling 31
Tone
Battery tone 108
Confirmation tone 10, 108
End of menu tone 108
Error tone 12, 108
Two-way recording 140

V

Vibration alarm 108
Viewing a message from the network mailbox 126
VIP phone number 40
Voice patterns
Clear 45
Playing 44
Recording 43
Voice-activated dialling 11, 43
Dialling 44
Navigation in the input field 1, 2
Volume
Adjust in handsfree mode 25
Loudspeaker volume 103
Ringer volume 104
Setting 104

W

Wait melody
setting up 123
Wake-up call
Deactivate 95
Setting the ringer 105
Walk and Talk mode
Activate/deactivate 80
Using a handset as a room monitor 80
Warning tone, see advisory tones
Writing a text message 58
Wrong inputs (correcting) 12

C1: The handset at a glance

Talk/directory key:

Top half:

- Answer a call
- Initiate dialling
- Switch from handsfree to "earpiece" mode

Bottom half:

- Open directory

Handsfree key:

- Switch from "earpiece" to handsfree mode
- Lights up: handsfree is activated
- Flashes: incoming call

Message key

Access to text messages, caller list, answering machine list (on Gigaset with answering machine)

Key 1

Answering machine (long press)

Star key

- Ringer on/off (long press)
- When texting: toggles between upper/lower case and digits

Charge status

flat fully charged

flashes: battery is almost flat or is charging

Current functions and display keys

The display keys give you access to the functions shown in the display

End call and On/Off key

- End call
- Cancel function
- Return to idle state (hold down)
- Handset on/off (in idle status, hold down)

Hash key

Keypad lock on/off (long press)

Speed dial list key

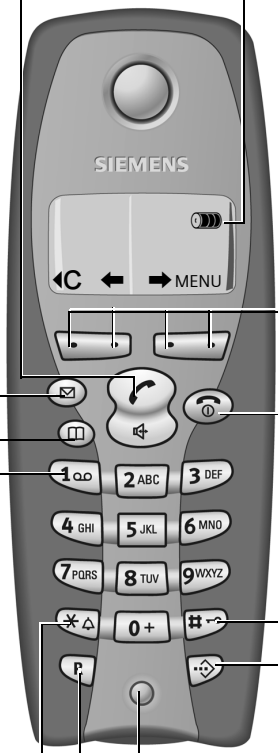
Open the speed dial list

Microphone

Recall key

Initiate enquiry call

C2: The handset at a glance



Talk/Handsfree key:

Top half:

- Answer a call
- Initiate dialling
- Switch from handsfree to "earpiece" mode

Bottom half:

- Switch from "earpiece" to handsfree mode
- Lights up: handsfree is activated
- Flashes: incoming call

Message key

Access to text messages, caller list, answering machine list (on Gigaset with answering machine)

Directory key:

Open directory

Key 1

Answering machine (long press)

Star key

- Ringer on/off (long press)
- When texting: toggles between upper/lower case and digits

Charge status

flat fully charged

flashes: battery is almost flat or is charging

Current functions and display keys

The display keys give you access to the functions shown in the display

End call and On/Off key

- End call
- Cancel function
- Return to idle state (hold down)
- Handset on/off (in idle status, hold down)

Hash key

Keypad lock on/off (long press)

Speed dial list key

Open the speed dial list

Microphone

Recall key

Initiate enquiry call

Contents

C1: The handset at a glance 1

C2: The handset at a glance 2

Safety precautions 7

Representation 8

Preparing to use the handset 9

Rocker key 11
Correcting wrong inputs 12
Idle status 12
Menu operation, using "Setting Handsfree Volume" as an example 13
Base station 13

Registering/de-registering handsets 14

Changing the base 15

Making calls 16

Making external calls and ending a call 16
Making an internal call 16
Answering a call 17
Withholding Calling Line Identification 17
Handsfree 19
Callback when the number is busy (CCBS) / when the call is not answered (CCNR) . 19

Functions during a call 21

Making a call to several users 21
Transferring calls 24
Dealing with a waiting external call – Call Waiting (CW) 25
Putting a call on hold (Call Hold) 25

Using the directory and other lists 26

Directory and speed dial list 26
Last number redial list 31
Opening lists with the message key 32
Calls lists 32

Making cost-effective calls 35

Linking a call-by-call number with a phone number 35

SMS (text messages) 36

General 36
Before you can send and receive text messages from SMS 36
Managing SMS service centres 37
Entering, editing or deleting phone numbers for SMS centres 38
Activating/deactivating SMS send centre 39
Registering/de-registering with an SMS centre 40
Memory 40
Sending a text message and the outgoing message list 41
Sending a text message to an e-mail address 45
Receiving text messages, incoming message list 46
Text messages to a PABX 50
Errors when sending and receiving a text message 50

Operating the answering machine directly 52

Selecting an answering machine 53
Activating/deactivating the answering machine 53
Selecting announce only and AM mode 54
Recording/changing announcements 54
Playing back/deleting announcements 55
Recording memos 55
Two-way recording 56
Picking up a call while the answering machine is responding 56
Playing messages 57
Returning a call during playback 58
Playing a message to another caller 58
Playing back memos 59
Deleting messages/memos 60
Marking an old message or memo as "new" 61
Adding a number to the directory 61
Checking messages/memos 61

Setting the answering machine 62

Assigning a receive MSN 62
Hiding/showing an answering machine 63
Specifying the number of rings before the answering machine starts 64
Activating/deactivating voice announcement of date and time 64
Setting the recording time and recording quality 64
Activating/deactivating automatic pause 65
Locking the answering machine, defining AM PIN 66
Activating/deactivating automatic listen in on the handset 66
Activating/deactivating automatic pickup 67
Activating/deactivating automatic notification via text message 68

Using several handsets 70

Using a handset as a room monitor 70
Setting the Walk and Talk mode 72

Date and Time 74

Setting the date and the time 74
Changing the time mode 74
Setting the alarm clock 75
Setting an appointment 76

Security settings 78

Changing the system PIN 78
Emergency numbers 79

System settings 80

Changing the name for an internal party 80
Setting up/deleting an ISDN phone number (MSN) 81
Assigning a phone number (MSN) 83
Assigning an MSN a ringer melody 84
Forwarding external calls – Call Forwarding (CF) 85
Activating/deactivating Call Waiting – (CW) 87
Configuring the answering machine on the network for fast access 88
Restoring the factory setting 89

Individual handset settings 90

Changing the display language 90
Activating/deactivating Auto Answer 90
Adjusting the loudspeaker volume 91
Changing the ringer tone 91
Activating/deactivating advisory tones 93
Resetting a handset to the factory setting 94

Operating with other devices 95

Setting device type 95
Making calls with devices on the analogue connection (TAE connection) 95
Activating/deactivating repeater mode 96

Operating when connected to a PABX 97

Access code 97
Dialling options 97

Making calls with the door subscriber station . . 99

Appendix 101

Care 101
Contact with liquid 101
Questions and answers 101
Service (Customer Care) 103
Specifications 104
Character set chart 105
Guarantee certificate (United Kingdom) 107
Guarantee certificate (Ireland) 107
Predictive text 109

Menu Tree 110

Main menu 110
"Base Settings" submenu 112
"Voice Mail" submenu 113
Directory key and speed dial list key 114

Index 115

Safety precautions ⚠

Fit only the **recommended rechargeable batteries (page 104)** and **of the same type**! Use no other types of batteries or non-rechargeable batteries, as they could damage health and cause personal injury.

Ensure correct polarity when fitting rechargeable batteries, and use the battery type according to these instructions (you will see polarity symbols in the handset's battery compartments).

The operation of medical appliances may be affected. Be aware of the technical conditions within the particular environment (e.g. doctor's practice).

The handset may cause an intrusive "hum" in hearing aids.

Do not install the base in bathrooms or shower rooms (page 101). The handset and base are not watertight.

Do not use the phone in environments subject to explosion hazard (e.g. auto paint shops).

If you give your Gigaset to someone else, make sure you also give them the operating manual.

Dispose of the batteries and phone in accordance with environmental regulations.

i	Not all of the functions described in these instructions are available in all countries.

Representation

Representation of the keys

Since the layouts of the keys on the C1 and C2 handsets described in this guide are different (page 11), a simplified representation has been chosen for the

- Talk key:
- Directory key:
- Handsfree key:

Gigaset C1:

Gigaset C2:

A table under a heading

A table under a heading indicates the bases or the handset on which this function is available.

Example: A function associated with bases that have an answering machine:

at the base:	CX150isdn	SX150isdn	CX253isdn	SX255isdn	SX353isdn

Example: The room monitor on the Gigaset C2:

on handset:	C2

Preparing to use the handset

Removing protective film

The display is protected by a plastic film.
Please remove the protective film!

Inserting the batteries

- Insert the batteries **ensuring correct polarity** (see figure on left).
- Place the cover on the battery compartment **about 3 mm down from the latch** and push it **up** until it clicks into position.

↯	Gigaset C2: Use only the rechargeable batteries recommended by Siemens on page 104! i. e. never use conventional (non-rechargeable) batteries or other battery types as this may cause significant damage to health and property. For example, the jacket of the battery could be destroyed (hazardous). The phone could also malfunction or be damaged.

Opening the battery compartment
Press on the ribbed section of the cover and push the cover **downwards**.

Charging batteries

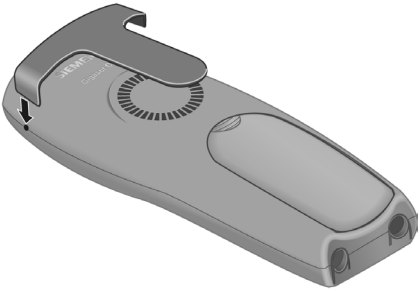
1. The charging is indicated in the upper right of the display where the charging status flashes:

▯	Batteries (almost) flat	▮▮▯	Batteries $^2/_3$ charged
▮▯	Batteries $^1/_3$ charged	▮▮▮	Batteries fully charged

i	To register **additional handsets**, refer to page 14.

Attaching the belt clip

on handset:	C2



Push the belt clip onto the back of the handset until the lugs click into the recesses on either side of the handset.

Activating/deactivating the handset

To activate the handset, press the end call key and hold. You will hear a confirmation tone (rising tone sequence).

To deactivate the handset, press the end call key again in the idle status and **hold** (confirmation tone).

i	The deactivated handset activates automatically when placed in the base or charger.

Activate/deactivate key block

You can lock the handset keypad if, for example, you are carrying the handset. This protects the keypad against inadvertent activation.

Press and **hold** the hash key. You will hear a confirmation tone and the symbol will appear in the display.

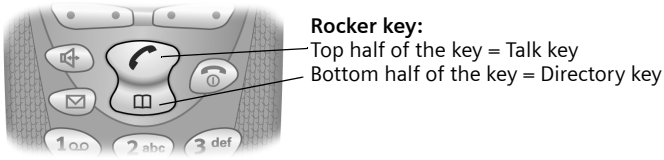
To **deactivate** the keypad lock, press the hash key again and **hold** (confirmation tone).

i	◆ The keypad lock deactivates automatically when you receive a call. It re-activates when the call is finished. ◆ When the keypad lock is active, you cannot even call emergency numbers.

Rocker key

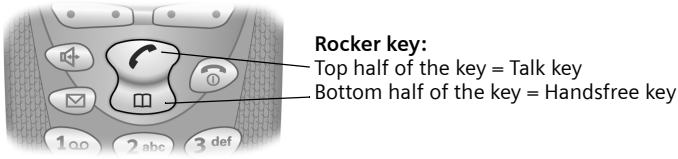
Gigaset C1: Talk/directory key

The talk/directory key is a **rocker key** that has two functions. You press the top half of this key to initiate a call. You press the bottom half of the key to open the directory.



Gigaset C2: Talk/Handsfree key

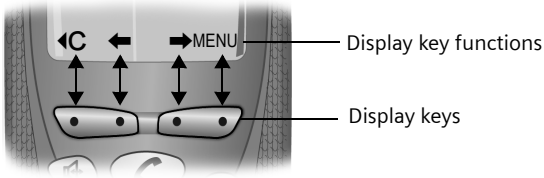
The talk/handsfree key is a **rocker key** that has two functions. You press the top half of this key to initiate a call. When you press the bottom half you initiate a call and the handsfree function activates **automatically**.



Display keys

The display keys are the **horizontal rocker keys** just below the display. Their function changes depending on the particular operating situation. The current function is shown in the display directly above the key to which it relates.

Example:



The various **display symbols** have the following meanings:

Display icon	Meaning when pressed
→→	Last number redial key: Opens the list of the last 10 numbers you dialled.
OK	OK key: Confirms menu function or confirm an input and store.
MENU	Menu key: Activates the main menu when in standby. Open a status-dependent menu while making a call.
INT	INT key: Dials internally to make a call to other handsets connected to the same base.
↑ ↓	Scrolls up / down.
← →	Moves cursor left / right.
C	Delete key: Deletes input from right to left one character at a time.

Correcting wrong inputs

After a correct input you will hear a confirmation tone (rising tone sequence). An incorrect input is indicated by an error tone (descending tone sequence). You can repeat the input.

If you have entered the wrong characters when entering figures or text you can correct this as follows:

Deleting characters to the left of the cursor with ◂C

To correct a telephone number or text, use the display keys ⬅ ➡ to move the cursor to the right of the incorrect character. Now press the display key ◂C. The character is deleted. Now enter the correct character.

Inserting characters to the right of the cursor

If you have omitted a character, use the display keys ⬅ ➡ to go to the place where you want to insert the character, and key it in.

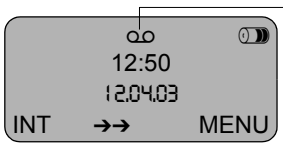
Overwriting characters

The number of digits for entering the date or time is predetermined and the field is preconfigured. Using the display keys ⬅ ➡ , position the cursor **on** the digit that is to be changed and overwrite it.

Idle status

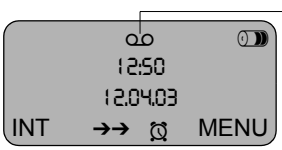
Display in idle status (example)

Gigaset C1:



Only available with Gigaset with answering machine: answering machine activated

Gigaset C2:



Only available with Gigaset with answering machine: answering machine activated

Reverting to idle status from anywhere in the menu:

- Press the end call key and hold or
- Press no key: The display **automatically** reverts to the idle status after 1 minute.

Changes which you have not confirmed/stored by pressing **OK** will be rejected.

Menu operation, using "Setting Handsfree Volume" as an example

1. **MENU** Press the display key. The menu opens.
2. ⬇ Press the display key repeatedly until **Audio Settings** appears on the screen.
3. **OK** Confirm with the display key.
4. ⬇ Press the display key repeatedly until **Handsfree Volume** appears on the screen.
5. **OK** Confirm with the display key.
6. ⬅ ➡ Press the left or right display key to select the volume (1–5).
7. **OK** Now press the display key to confirm the setting.
8. Press and **hold** the end call key to return to the idle status.

Base station

A few more settings are required to operate your phone:

- Date and time unless set by the phone network (page 74)
- On Gigaset with integrated answering machine: Hiding/showing answering machine 1 ... 3 (page 63)
- Enter MSNs for your phone connection (page 81)
- Set type of device for the devices connected (page 95)
- Set receive MSN (page 83)
- Outside line code (when using a PABX page 97).

You can make the settings with the C1 and C2 handsets, and also with other handsets.

Registering/de-registering handsets

On some bases, your Gigaset C1 or C2 handset is registered automatically. In any event, you can register your Gigaset C1 or C2 handset manually.

Your C2 Gigaset handset can be registered on up to four bases.

Automatic registration

at the base:	CX100isdn	CX150isdn	SX100isdn	SX150isdn

To register for the first time, place the **deactivated** handset in the base with the **display facing upwards**. The registration procedure takes about 1 minute. The handset **automatically** receives the lowest free internal number from the range **Int.11** to **Int.16**.

If all the internal numbers for wireless terminals have already been assigned on your phone, please de-register another handset that you no longer require before registering a new one (page 15).

Manual registration

If all the internal numbers for wireless terminals have already been assigned on your phone, please de-register another handset that you no longer require before registering a new one (page 15).

You must initiate handset registration on the handset and on the base.

1. Preparing the base for registration (see operating instructions for the base).

2. On the handset (within 30 sec.)

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Handset Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Register Handset** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Base 1** **OK**	Select base (1–4) and confirm, e. g. **Base 1**.
OK	Enter system PIN of the base (set at the factory: 0000) and confirm. **Registering** appears in the display along with the name of the base e. g. **Base 1**. Once the handset has located the base, the list of free internal numbers is shown in the display.
↓ **Int.11** **OK**	Select internal number and confirm, e. g. **Int.11**.

After registration the handset reverts to idle status.

i	The handset interrupts the base search after 60 seconds. If registration has not been completed within this time, repeat the procedure.

De-registering handsets

You can de-register any registered handset from any registered Gigaset C1 or C2 handset.

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Handset Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **Setup user** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **De-reg. device** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Int.16** **OK**	Select the handset that you wish to de-register and confirm, e. g. **Int.16**.
	Hold down (return to idle status).

Changing the base

on handset:	C2

The following settings may be made if your handset is registered with more than one base:

- Set to one specific base, e.g. the base at home or the base at the office.
- Set to the base with the best reception (**Best Base**). This setting will automatically select whichever base has the best reception.

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Handset Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Select Base** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **OK**	Select one of the registered bases or **Best Base** and confirm.

Making calls

Making external calls and ending a call

External calls are calls using the public telephone network.

	Enter the phone number and press the talk key. The phone number is dialled.
	End the call:
	Press end call key.

i	◆ You can also **press** the talk key first (you hear the dialling tone) and then enter the number. ◆ You can use the end call key to cancel the dialling operation. ◆ You can also end a conversation by placing the handset in the base.

Making an internal call

Internal calls are calls between handsets that are registered with the same base. These calls are free.

You can either call a specific handset or all registered internal users at the same time ("group call").

i	If you receive a call during an internal call or group call, the call is not interrupted. You will hear a call waiting tone.

Calling a specific handset

INT	Open **Internal call**.
either ...	
	Enter the number of the internal party you want.
or ...	
MENU	Open the menu.
⬇ **Int.11** **OK**	Select and confirm the internal number you want, e. g. **Int.11**.

Starting a group call to all internal users

You can make a group call to all other registered internal users from any handset. In the supplied condition, this option is activated.

INT	Initiate an internal call.
either ...	
(*)	Press the star key.
or ...	
MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Collective call** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

The first internal user to pick up the call is connected with you.

Answering a call

Your handset rings, the call is displayed on the screen and the handsfree key flashes.

Press the talk key or the handsfree key to accept the call.

either ...	
	Press the talk key.
or ...	
	Press the handsfree key.

If the handset is in the base/charger and the **Auto Answer** function is activated (page 90), then you just need to lift the handset out of the base/charger to take the call.

Withholding Calling Line Identification

Precondition: The "Withhold Calling Line Identification" feature is supported by your network provider.

When supplied, your phone number is displayed on the phone of the person you are calling (CLIP – for outgoing connections) and the caller's phone number is displayed on your handset (COLP – for incoming connections).

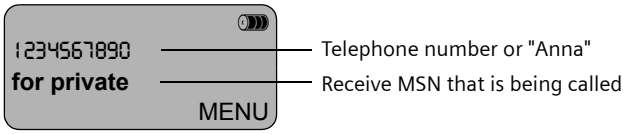
You can withhold this Calling Line Identification (CLIR – for outgoing connections, COLR – for incoming connections). CLIP/CLIR are paired with COLP/COLR: If you withhold Calling Line Identification both – CLIR and COLR – are activated.

CLIP	Calling Line Identification Presentation = Display of the phone number in outgoing calls
CLIR	Calling Line Identity Restriction = Withholding of the phone number display in outgoing calls
COLP	Calling Line Identification Presentation = Display of the phone number in incoming calls
COLR	Calling Line Identity Restriction = Withholding of the phone number display in incoming calls

Displaying caller's phone number

Precondition: Calling Line Identification is activated for the caller.

Screen display with CLIP
With Calling Line Identification, the caller's telephone number is displayed on the handset screen. If you have stored an entry for this number in your directory, the directory entry will be displayed instead of the number, e. g. "Anna".



unknown is displayed on the screen if the caller's phone number is not identified.

Withholding phone number identification

If you do not wish your phone number to be revealed to the person you are speaking to you can withhold identification of your phone number specifically for the next call or else for all calls. If set for all calls, the phone number is withheld both for outgoing calls (CLIR) and for incoming calls (COLR).

Withholding or permitting identification of your phone number for all calls
By factory default, **Withhold no.** is not activated.

MENU		Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **ISDN settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Withhold no.**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).
⏻		**Long** press (back to idle status).

Handsfree

Activating/deactivating handsfree

	Activate while dialling:
	Enter the phone number and press the handsfree key (instead of the talk key).
	Activate during a call:
	Press the handsfree key.
	Deactivate handsfree:
	Press the handsfree key.

As soon as you terminate the handsfree mode you switch to "earpiece mode" and continue the call on the handset.

i	If you wish to place the handset in the base during a call you must press the handsfree key and hold it down while you position the handset in the base.

Adjusting the volume while in handsfree mode

A call is in progress and handsfree is activated.

	Press the handsfree key **again**.
◀ ▶ **OK**	Decrease or increase the volume and confirm.

Callback when the number is busy (CCBS) / when the call is not answered (CCNR)

Precondition: The exchange supports this service.

Ringback when busy – CCBS (Completion of calls to busy subscriber)
The user you are calling is currently making a call. Automatic callback saves you making repeated attempts to dial the number.

Callback when the call is not answered – CCNR (Completion of Calls No Reply)
If the user you are calling does not answer you can arrange automatic callback. As soon as the user has finished a call and the line is free again you will be rung back. The callback request is automatically cancelled after about 2 hours (depending on the exchange).

Activating callback

The number you are calling is busy or your call is not answered:

MENU	Open the menu.
CALLBCK **OK**	Press the display key.
	Wait for confirmation from the exchange.

Accepting a callback

The handset rings with a special ring and the display shows the callback number.

	Press the talk key. The connection is established.

Cancelling callback

Before callback is signalled:

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Status** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The status list is displayed (✓ = activated).
↓ **Callback** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The current call-back number is shown on the screen.
MENU	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Check:**
↓ **Back** **OK**	Confirm.
or ...	**Cancel:**
Delete **OK**	Confirm. The callback function is cancelled.

When callback is being signalled:
Precondition: The handset is ringing and the screen displays the callback number.

MENU	Open the menu.
Delete **OK**	Confirm. The callback function is cancelled.

Functions during a call

Making a call to several users

You initiate a call to several users through an enquiry call. You can then speak to the other users either one at a time ("toggling", page 23) or at the same time ("conference call", page 23). An enquiry call may only be made when you are making an external call.

External enquiry call

You wish to call another external user during an external or internal call.

Initiate enquiry call:

either ...	
MENU	Open the menu.
Enquiry call **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	
(R)	Press the recall key.

The call to the first user is now put on hold.

Make a call to the second external user:

	Enter the second user's telephone number. You can also make a call via the directory or other lists (page 26).
	If the second external user you have dialled is busy:
MENU	Open the menu.
Back **OK**	Confirm to return to the first user.
	If the second external user rings:
either ...	**Toggle (page 23):**
⬆ ⬇	Swap between callers.
or ...	**Conference call (page 23):**
MENU	Open the menu.
⬇ **Conference** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	
	Transfer the call (page 24).

Internal enquiry call

You wish to call an internal user during an external call.

Initiate an internal enquiry call:

either ...	
INT	Open **Internal call**.
or ...	
MENU	Open the menu.
Enquiry call **OK**	Confirm.
INT	Open **Internal call**.
or ...	
(R)	Press the recall key.
INT	Open **Internal call**.

The call to the first user is now put on hold.

Make a call to the internal user:

either ...	
	Enter the number of the internal party you want.
or ...	
MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **LIST** **OK**	Open list of handsets.
↓ **Int.11** **OK**	Select and confirm the internal number you want, e.g., **Int.11**.
	If the internal user you have dialled is busy:
MENU	Open the menu.
Back **OK**	Confirm to return to the external user.
	The internal party has answered:
either ...	**Toggle (page 23):**
↑ ↓	Swap between callers.
or ...	**Conference call (page 23):**
MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Conference** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	
	Transfer the call (page 24).

Toggling

Precondition: You have established an enquiry call (page 21 and page 22).

There is both an active call (the one established with an enquiry call) and a held call (the first). You can speak to both callers one at a time.

Use ⬆ ⬇ to swap between the two callers.

End enquiry call/toggling:

either ...	**End the call that is currently active:**
MENU	Open the menu.
End **OK**	Confirm. You return to the waiting caller.
or ...	
☎	Press the **end call** key. The active connection is ended. You will be called back automatically by the person on hold.

Conference call

Precondition: You have established an enquiry call (page 21 and page 22).

There is both an active call (the one established with an enquiry call) and a held call (the first). In a conference call you can speak to both other callers at the same time.

i	You can make a conference call with ◆ two external users or ◆ with one internal user and one external user.

It is possible to conduct two conference calls at the same time on one base.

Establishing a conference

You are making an enquiry call. The first caller is put on hold.

MENU	Open the menu.
⬇ **Conference** **OK**	Confirm to set up a conference call.

Ending a conference
You have several options for ending a conference call:

either ...	You end the conference:
☎	Press the **end call** key The conference call is ended; the two other users will hear the busy tone.
or ...	**You change the conference to an enquiry call:**
MENU	Open the menu.
INDIV. **OK**	Confirm to change the conference to an enquiry call (page 21 and page 22).The connection that was active immediately before the conference was established becomes the active call again.

Transferring calls

Transferring a call to an external number – ECT (Explicit Call Transfer)

Precondition: It is only possible to transfer a call if the network provider or the exchange also supports ECT. If this is not the case, then the external call is disconnected. The number cannot be called back.

You are making an external call and would like to transfer it to another external user. Establish an external enquiry call (page 21), and then press the end call key ☎ (even before the other party has answered) to transfer the call.

Transferring a call to another handset

You are making an **external** call and would like to transfer it to another handset.

Establish an internal enquiry call (page 22), and then press the end call key ☎ to transfer the call. You can press the end call key before the second user has responded.

Dealing with a waiting external call – Call Waiting (CW)

Precondition: Call Waiting (CW) has been set up (page 87).

You hear the call waiting tone (short beep) if you receive an external call while conducting another call (internal or external). The caller's number or name will appear in the display if Calling Line Identification is enabled.

There are three options for dealing with a waiting external call:

Accept the waiting call – enquiry call:

MENU	Open the menu.
Accept **OK**	Confirm. You accept the waiting call and the first call is put on hold. To toggle between both callers see page 23, for a conference call see page 23.

Reject the waiting call:

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Reject** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

i	If you reject the call waiting tone on your handset, it can still be heard on other registered handsets.

Change caller:

ⓞ	End your current call. The waiting call becomes a normal call.
✆	Press the talk key to accept the call.

Putting a call on hold (Call Hold)

Putting an external caller on hold:

You are conducting an external call.

Press the display key **INT**. The external caller is put on hold. You can initiate an internal enquiry call (page 22).

Putting an internal caller on hold:

You are conducting an internal call.

MENU	Open the menu.
Enquiry call **OK**	Confirm. The internal caller is put on hold.

Using the directory and other lists

Directory and speed dial list

The **directory** makes dialling easier for you. The **speed dial list** is a special directory in which you can store additional important numbers such as private telephone numbers and the prefixes of network providers (known as "call-by-call numbers"). You open the speed dial list with the key.

The speed dial list is operated in just the same way as the directory, except for the way in which entries are stored. For storing entries in the speed dial list, please refer to page 27.

Gigaset C1:

You can store up to 50 telephone numbers in the directory.

In the speed dial list you can store up to 10 telephone numbers.

To open the directory, press the directory key .

i	◆ Please refer to the **Character Set Chart** (page 105) to see how to enter text. ◆ You can enter up to 32 digits for a number and up to 16 letters for a name. ◆ For information on the order of entries in the directory please refer to page 106.

Gigaset C2:

You can store up to 100 telephone numbers in the directory.

In the speed dial list you can store up to 10 telephone numbers.

You open the directory with the directory key . You can mark any directory entry as "VIP".

You create the directory and speed dial list for your individual handset. You can send the lists/individual entries to the other handsets if you want them to be available at other handsets as well (page 30).

i	◆ The **EATONI** predictive text helps you input names (page 109, this feature is deactivated when you purchase your phone). ◆ Please refer to the **Character Set Chart** (page 105) to see how to enter text. ◆ You can enter up to 32 digits for a number and up to 16 letters for a name. ◆ For information on the order of entries in the directory please refer to page 106.

Storing a telephone number in the directory

	Open the directory.
either ...	**The directory is empty:**
OK	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
or ...	**There are already entries in the directory:**
MENU	Press display key to open menu.
New Entry **OK**	Confirm.
... then	
OK	Enter phone number and confirm.
MENU	Enter the name and press the display key.
Save Entry **OK**	Confirm. The entry is stored.
	Long press (back to idle status).

i	If your phone is connected to a PABX you may have to enter the access code (outside line code) as the first digit of your directory entry (refer to the operating instructions of your PABX).

Storing a telephone number in the speed dial list

You can assign a digit (0, 2–9) to **up to nine** entries on your speed dial list. When you press and hold one of these digits, e.g. "3" together with the talk key you are immediately connected to the telephone number that is assigned the number 3.

	Open the speed dial list.
either ...	**The directory is empty:**
OK	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
or ...	**There are already entries in the directory:**
MENU	Press display key to open menu.
New Entry **OK**	Confirm.
OK	Enter phone number and confirm.
MENU	Enter the name and press the display key.
Save Entry **OK**	Confirm. The entry is stored.
MENU	Press display key to open menu.
Shortcut **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Shortcut: 2 **OK**	Select the digit and confirm.
	Long press (back to idle status).

i	Speed dial digits cannot be assigned more than once at a time.

Dialling with the directory/speed dial list

	Open the directory or speed dial list.
either ...	**Scroll to the entry:**
	Select entry.
	Press the talk key. The number is dialled.
or ...	**Enter the first letter:**
	Enter the first letter of the name.
	Select entry.
	Press the talk key. The number is dialled.

Viewing and editing an entry in the directory/speed dial list

	Open the directory or speed dial list.
MENU	Select the entry and press the display key.
Edit Entry **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Change the number and confirm.
MENU	Change the name and press the display key.
Save Entry **OK**	Confirm. The entry is stored.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Copying and editing a directory entry

on handset:	C2

So that you do not have to make a similar entry twice, you can create a copy and then edit that entry.

	Open the directory.
MENU	Select the entry and press the display key.
Copy and Edit **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	
OK	Change the number and confirm.
or ...	
OK	Edit the name and confirm.
MENU	Press display key to open menu.
Save Entry **OK**	Confirm. The entry is stored.
... then	

OK	If you only edit the name, you will see a message telling you that the number already exists. Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
ⓒ	**Long** press (back to idle status).

i	The "VIP" setting and the voice patterns (in the case of the Gigaset with answering machine) are not copied.

Marking a directory entry as VIP

on handset: C2

You can mark directory entries of callers who are particularly important to you as "VIP" (Very Important Person). You can also assign a particular melody to VIP numbers. You can then tell who is calling you from the ringer melody. The VIP melody sounds after the first ring tone.

Precondition: Calling Line Identification is activated (page 17).

ⓜ	Open the directory.
↓ **MENU**	Select the entry and press the display key.
↓ **VIP Entry** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = On).
↓ **OK**	You hear the current melody. Select a melody (1–10) (page 91) and confirm. The number ends with "VIP".
ⓒ	**Long** press (back to idle status).

Deleting a single entry or directory/speed dial list

ⓜ ⓞ	Open the directory or speed dial list.
↓ **MENU**	Select the entry and press the display key.
either ...	**Delete a single entry:**
↓ **Delete Entry** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Delete the entire directory/speed dial list:**
↓ **Delete List** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
... then	
ⓒ	**Long** press (back to idle status).

Adding a displayed telephone number to the directory

When a telephone number appears in the display (CLIP) you can add it to your directory. You can do this while dialling from the last number redial list, from the calls list/answering machine list (on a Gigaset with answering machine) or during a call.

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Copy to Directory** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Confirm the telephone number.
MENU	If required, enter the name and press the display key.
Save Entry **OK**	Confirm. The entry is stored.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Selecting a phone number from the directory

If you are prompted to enter an external telephone number while you are operating your telephone, you can use the directory to do this.

Precondition: The input field for external telephone numbers is displayed.

	Open the directory or speed dial list.
... then	
↓ **OK**	Select entry and confirm.

The telephone number is added to the entry field.

Sending a single entry or complete list to a handset

on handset:	C2

You can send single entries or the complete list to another handset that is registered on the same base. This avoids entering information twice. VIP settings and speed dial (shortcut) digits are not sent.

	Open the directory or speed dial list.
↓ **MENU**	Select the entry and press the display key.
either ...	**Send a single entry:**
↓ **Send Entry** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Send complete list:**
↓ **Send List** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
... then	
↓ **INT 2** **OK**	Select the handset to which you wish to send the entry or list and confirm, e. g. handset 2. Your selections are sent to that handset.
	Long press (back to idle status).

After an entry has been sent, you are asked if you want to send another entry. If you confirm with the display key **OK**, you can select more entries to send; once you have finishing sending, press the "end call" key.

The successful transfer of data is confirmed with a message and with the confirmation tone at the receiving handset. Existing entries in the receiving handset are retained.

Entries with identical numbers or names are not overwritten. The number of entries that are stored in the receiving handset may therefore differ from the number of entries that you have sent to it.

The transfer is cancelled if the phone rings and you take the call or if the memory of the receiving handset is full. The last entry to be transferred appears in the display.

Last number redial list

The last number redial list contains the ten last dialled numbers. If names have also been stored for these numbers in the directory, then these names will be displayed. If there are several identical entries only the most recent will be displayed. If the last number redial list is full, the oldest entry will be deleted. You can use the last number redial list to redial the telephone numbers.

Manual last number redial

→→	Open the last number redial list.
↓	Select the entry and press the talk key. The phone number is dialled.

i	◆ To add or change the telephone number, open the last number redial list, then press **MENU** and confirm **Use Number** with **OK**. ◆ To add a telephone number from the last number redial list to the directory (page 30), press **MENU** ↓ **Copy to Directory** **OK**.

Deleting a single telephone number or the entire last number redial list

→→	Open the last number redial list.
↓ **MENU**	Select an entry and open the menu.
either ...	**Delete a single telephone number:**
↓ **Delete Entry** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
	If there still entries on the list, press the key and **hold** (back to idle status).
or ...	**Delete the entire last number redial list:**
↓ **Delete List** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

Opening lists with the message key

Providing a new entry is present in the relevant list, you can open the following lists using the message key ✉:

1. Incoming SMS message list **Textmessage(SMS)** (page 46)
2. List of missed calls **Missed calls** (page 32)
3. Answering machine lists **AM1** , **AM2** , **AM3** (on Gigaset with answering machine).

These lists display the calls, messages and text messages belonging to the receive MSNs that are assigned to the handset.

You hear an advisory tone as soon as a **new entry** (calls, messages on an integrated answering machine and/or text message) arrives in one or more lists. The ✉ icon is displayed on the screen. On the C1 handset, the Message key ✉ also flashes.

If you press the ✉ key, the following is displayed:

- If only one list has new entries, you will see the first new entry in that list.
  Open entry: ↓ (Select entry) **OK**
- If several lists have new entries, those lists are offered for your selection.
  Open entry: ↓ (Select list) **OK**, ↓ (Select entry) **OK**
- If there are no new entries, then the message "**No new messages**" is shown briefly. Then the list of missed calls is opened.

Calls lists

There are two calls lists:

- the list of **missed** calls
  This contains all the calls that have not been accepted or have been rejected plus all calls responded to by an answering machine for which there is no message attached.
- the list of **accepted** calls
  This contains all the calls accepted by an internal user or answering machine.

The calls in these lists are displayed on a receive MSN assigned to the handset. In each case the phone numbers for the last 20 calls are stored. The oldest entry is deleted if a calls list is full and new entries are added. The most recent entry is at the top of the list and the oldest at the bottom.

A caller is entered in the relevant calls list at the end of a call. If a caller's number has been transferred and this phone number is entered in the directory, then the caller's name is inserted. If there are several identical entries only the most recent will be displayed in the two lists. A caller can appear in both lists if one call he makes is answered and another not. If an outgoing call is made to a caller who is entered in the list of missed calls, then this entry is transferred to the last number redial list and deleted from the list of missed calls.

Opening calls lists

You can open both calls lists via the menu. The list of missed calls can also be opened via the ✉ key.

MENU		Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...		
↓ **Accepted calls**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...		
↓ **Missed calls**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

i	If another internal user has already opened a calls list you cannot open it.

Calling back a caller

Precondition: The caller's number has been identified.

Open the list of missed or accepted calls (page 33). **Now**:

↓		Select entry.
either ...		
✆ 🔊		Press talk key or handsfree key.
or ...		
MENU		Open the menu.
Dial number	**OK**	Confirm.
✆ 🔊		Press talk key or handsfree key.

Callback begins at once. The phone number is deleted from the calls list and entered in the last number redial list.

i	To a PABX: The access code (outside line code) is automatically put before the phone number (page 97).

Displaying an entry

Open the list of missed or accepted calls (page 33). **Now**:

↓ **MENU**		Select entry and open the submenu.
↓ **Display entry**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

Changing the caller's phone number

Open the list of missed or accepted calls (page 33). **Now**:

↓ **MENU**	Select entry and open the submenu.
↓ **Change number** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The number is displayed.
	Change the number.
MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry **OK**	Confirm.

Adding an entry to the directory from the calls list

Open the list of missed or accepted calls (page 33). **Now**:

↓ **MENU**	Select entry and open the submenu.
↓ **Copy to dir.** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Confirm the telephone number.
	Enter name (for text input see page 105).
MENU	Press display key to open menu.
Save Text **OK**	Confirm. The entry is stored.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Deleting an entry from the calls list

Open the list of missed or accepted calls (page 33). **Now**:

either ...	**Delete a single entry:**
↓ **MENU**	Select entry and open the submenu.
↓ **Delete entry** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The entry is deleted.
or ...	**Delete all entries:**
MENU	Open the submenu.
↓ **Delete list** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Confirm the prompt.
	Hold down (return to idle status).

Making cost-effective calls

Sign up with a network provider who offers particularly low-cost call rates (call-by-call). You can use the speed dial list to manage your call-by-call numbers.

i	You manage entries in the speed dial list in the same way as entries in the directory by opening the speed dial list with the ⊙ key instead of the directory. You will find instructions on storing, editing and deleting entries starting on page 26.

Linking a call-by-call number with a phone number

This function can be used to put a network provider's prefix in front of the telephone number ("linking").

⊙	Open the network access list.
↓ **OK**	Select the entry and press the display key.
Use Number **OK**	Confirm.
either ...	**Enter the telephone number:**
	Enter the telephone number.
or ...	**Select a number from the directory:**
⊡ ↓ **OK**	Open the directory, select an entry and confirm.
✆	Press the talk key. The number is dialled.

SMS (text messages)

You can send and receive SMS text messages (**S**hort **M**essage **S**ervice) with your handset. You can send an SMS to any fixed network or mobile phone network number. Your SMS can be received as a text message by any device with SMS functionality (mobile phone, PC, another telephone). If the recipient of your SMS does not have a phone with SMS functionality, then the SMS is played back.

You can write, edit, read, delete or forward SMS text messages from any registered handset that has SMS functionality and to which the same receive MSN has been assigned. When several handsets with the same receive MSN are in use at any one time, only **one handset** can access the SMS functions.

General

Text messages are exchanged between SMS centres that are operated by service providers. The telephone number of the SMS centres through which you wish to send and receive text messages must be entered in your phone (page 38). Up to ten SMS centres can be entered. The **SMS Service Centre "Anny Way"** and the **provider's SMS service are preconfigured** at the factory. You can change the telephone numbers of the SMS centres.

You can receive text messages via **any** of the SMS centres whose number you have entered. Of course you must be registered to receive text messages with those SMS centres (page 40).

Your text message is sent through the SMS centre that is entered as the **active** send service centre.

Before you can send and receive text messages from SMS

- Calling Line Identification may not be permanently deactivated for the MSN used (page 17).
- You must be registered with your service provider to receive text messages (page 40).
- The handset must have **Unrestricted** authorisation to send an SMS. To receive an SMS, **Incoming only** authorisation is adequate. This setting can only be made with an S1, SL1 Komfort handset or on the SX303isdn, SX353isdn, CX203isdn, CX253isdn base telephone
- You must not allow the network provider to block the phone numbers you have entered for the SMS centres.

In Germany, the SMS service is available exclusively to telephone numbers that are connected with the **local area network** via **Deutsche Telekom AG** (you receive your telephone bill from Deutsche Telekom). It is currently not possible to send a text message if you have a call-by-call connection.

If the telephone of a receiver cannot receive an SMS in the fixed network, the SMS is automatically read as a voice message. Between 7.00 and 22.00 hrs, these text messages are delivered immediately in the form of a telephone call. Text messages sent after 22.00 hrs are stored and delivered the next day.

If you have entered into a preselection contract with a network provider, ask whether they support the "Fixed line SMS" feature. (Preselection means you are bound contractually to a network provider.)

In Switzerland, the SMS function is not supported on the ISDN network (as of September 2003).

Ask your service provider

- what charges are billed for sending and receiving a text message,
- which mobile phone operators you can send text messages to and which mobile phone operators you can receive text messages from,
- which functions your SMS service offers,
- how you are registered with SMS centres which your phone may already be preconfigured for – automatically by sending a message or by a special registration procedure.

Managing SMS service centres

SMS messages are exchanged through SMS service centres. To send and receive a text message, you require the phone number for your service provider's SMS centre. You have to store this phone number in your telephone.

You may enter up to ten SMS centres in your telephone.

Sending an SMS – send centre

You must enter the phone number of the SMS centre you want to use for sending text messages in your telephone and activate it as a "send centre" (page 38 and page 39). This phone number will be used for sending all SMS messages.

As supplied, the "Anny Way" SMS centre has already been entered (number 0190 01504) and activated as the send centre. This means that, in Germany, you may send text messages immediately.

You can activate another SMS centre as the active send service centre. The send centre that was activated previously is then automatically deactivated.

Receiving an SMS

You can receive an SMS message via any SMS centre you have entered provided you have registered with these SMS centres as an SMS recipient (if registered, see page 40).

Entering, editing or deleting phone numbers for SMS centres

You can enter up to ten SMS centres.

Before entering or editing the number, please obtain information about special features and what the SMS service provider offers.

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Service centres** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The phone number list appears.
↓	Select entry, e. g. **<empty>**.
MENU	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Create or edit an entry:**
Edit entry **OK**	Confirm.
	Enter the phone number of the SMS centre.
MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry **OK**	Confirm.
or ...	**Delete an entry:**
↓ **Delete entry** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Hold down (return to idle status).

i	◆ If you delete the phone number of a send centre, then you must activate another SMS centre to be the send centre in order to be able to continue sending text messages. ◆ If your telephone is connected to a PABX, you may have to prefix the phone number with an access code (number with which you obtain an exchange line, usually "0") (this depends on your PABX) see page 50.

Activating/deactivating SMS send centre

To send an SMS you must activate the phone number for the required SMS centre as the send centre. By doing this you determine via which SMS centre the text message is to be sent. Text messages can be received via all SMS centres entered, as long as you have previously completed the corresponding registration procedure (see the next chapter) to be recognized as an SMS-capable connection.

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Service centres** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. You will now see the phone number list.
↓	Select the required telephone number.
MENU	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Activate SMS centre as the send centre:**
↓ **Serv.centre on?** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The display changes to **Serv.centre off?** The SMS centre is activated as the send centre. In the list the phone number of the SMS centre is marked with a ✓. The previous send centre is automatically deactivated.
or ...	**Deactivate SMS centre:**
↓ **Serv.centre off?** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. SMS centre is deactivated.

i	◆ When the Service centres phone number list is opened, the display jumps immediately to the send centre. ◆ If you have not activated an SMS send centre you will not be able to send an SMS, but you will be able to receive text messages from all the SMS centres you have entered.

Registering/de-registering with an SMS centre

In order to be able to receive text messages on your phone you must first register your phone number with an SMS service provider. You can find out from the service provider concerned which information you need to send to register and de-register.

To register with an SMS service provider you must first enter the phone number of the SMS centre concerned and activate it as the send centre.

After you have registered, remember to re-activate the SMS centre as the send centre via which you wish to send text messages.

i	Take care to register the phone number (MSN) that is assigned to the handset as send MSN (page 83), and with which you are sending the text message. If you also want to send and receive text messages via other handsets with different MSN's, then you must also have these phone numbers registered.

Registering/de-registering with the "Anny Way" SMS service centre

To register you only need to send an SMS message to any recipient within the fixed network or mobile phone network. Charges with be made for the SMS you have sent.

De-registering is only possible indirectly by deleting the phone number for "Anny Way" (0190 01504) from the list of SMS centres. Any SMS sent to you will no longer be delivered as a text message but as a voice message.

Registering/de-registering with the Deutsche Telekom SMS centre

To register with the Deutsche Telekom SMS centre, proceed as follows:

1. Activate the Deutsche Telekom SMS centre (0193010) as the send centre.
2. Send a text message with the text "REGISTER" to the destination phone number 8888. This text message is free.
3. Re-activate your preferred SMS send centre.

To de-register, send a text message with the text "DE-REGISTER" to the number 8888. Any SMS sent to you will then be played back as voice messages.

Memory

The number of text messages that can be stored in the base depends on the size of the messages (about 11 text messages of up to 160 characters each). The memory is used for the incoming and outgoing message list. If the memory is full, the message "Text list full! Please delete entries" is displayed. Delete text messages you no longer require from the incoming and outgoing message lists.

You can check how much capacity your SMS memory has left (in %).

MENU		Open the menu.
SMS	**OK**	Confirm.
↓ **Available memory**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. Available memory is displayed in %.

Sending a text message and the outgoing message list

Notes on writing and sending an SMS message

If you are interrupted as you are writing (by a call, an incoming SMS or because the handset changes to idle status because of prolonged inactivity), the SMS is automatically stored in the **outgoing message list**. You can continue writing the SMS later (page 43).

Text messages that **cannot** be sent are assigned an error status (page 50) and are placed in the **incoming message list**.

Text messages are only stored automatically if sending is interrupted. If you wish to store a message then you must do so **before it is sent**.

i	Remember that some **service providers** will bill you for a cancelled call to the SMS centre. Deutsche Telekom's SMS Service will not charge for an interrupted call.

Writing text messages

Gigaset C1:

A **single** text message can be up to 160 characters long.

Remember that the service provider cannot deliver a text message that contains Greek or Cyrillic characters.

Gigaset C2:

A **single** text message can be up to 160 characters long. If your text is longer, it will be sent **automatically** as a **linked** message. Up to four messages with 153 characters each can be linked. This means you can enter up to 612 characters. Bear in mind that linked messages incur correspondingly higher charges.

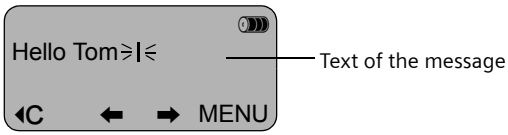
Remember that the service provider cannot deliver a text message that contains Greek or Cyrillic characters. If you have set Greek or Russian as your display language therefore, you will need to change the input language **before you write** a message.

When you have opened the input window for the text message, press the display key **MENU** first. From the menu, select **Predictive Text** Language and then press **OK** to confirm your choice. Now select an input language that uses the **Roman** character set (e. g. **Deutsch** or **English**). Press **OK** to confirm your selection and then briefly press the "end call" key ⓒ twice to return to the input window. The setting of the input language only applies to the current text message.

Write text messages as follows:

MENU		Open the menu.
SMS	**OK**	Confirm.
Write message	**OK**	Confirm. The input field opens.
		Input your text (for text input see page 105).

i	**Gigaset C2:** You will be assisted as you write a text message by the EATONI (page 109) predictive text feature. EATONI is activated in the supplied condition. You can deactivate EATONI at any time by selecting **MENU**, ⬇ **Predictive Text OK**.



Saving text messages

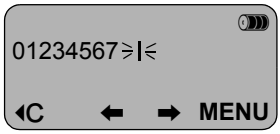
Precondition: You have written a text message (page 41) and the input field is open.

MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
⬇ **Save Text** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. You can then send the text message (page 42).

The message is stored in the **outgoing message list**. It can be retrieved and sent at a later time (page 43).

Sending a text message without saving it

Precondition: You have written a text message (page 41) and the input field is open.

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
Send Text **OK**	Confirm.
either ...	
	Enter the recipient's number (with prefix). 
or ...	**Select a number from the directory:**
	Open the directory.
⬇ **OK**	Select entry and confirm. The number appears in the display.
... then	
MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Send **OK**	Confirm.

i	The recipient's number must always include the **area code** (prefix), even if you are in that area.

Examples of phone number inputs:

08912345678	A national telephone number within the fixed network
077x1234567	A number within the mobile phone network

Opening the outgoing message list

The **outgoing message list** shows you:

- Text messages which you saved **before you sent them** (page 42).
- Text messages that could not be sent because, for example, you were interrupted by an incoming call while you were writing the message.

However, the list only shows text messages that are assigned to the same send MSN as the handset.

These messages are stored until you delete them.

MENU		Open the menu.
SMS	**OK**	Confirm.
↓ **Outbox**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The figure shown indicates how many text messages are stored in the outgoing message list. You can scroll through the list using ↓ and ↑ .

i	When the memory is full, you are prompted to delete messages (page 40).

Reading and deleting text messages in the outgoing message list

Precondition: You have opened the outgoing message list (page 43).

↓		Select SMS.
MENU		Open the menu.
either ...		**Read SMS:**
Read textmessage	**OK**	Confirm. Use ↓ to view the continuation of the text message in the display.
or ...		**Delete SMS:**
↓ **Delete textmess.**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

Deleting the entire outgoing message list

This function deletes all the messages in the outgoing message list.

Precondition: You have opened the outgoing message list (page 43).

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Delete list** **OK**	Confirm.
OK	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
⌂	**Short** press (back to idle status).

Sending or editing text messages in the outgoing message list

Precondition: You have opened a text message in the outgoing message list to read (page 43).

MENU	Open the menu.
either ...	**Write and send a new text message:**
Write Message **OK**	Confirm. The input field is opened (page 41). You can write a new text message.
or ...	**Edit and send a stored text message:**
↓ **Use text** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The input field is opened with the contents of the stored text message. You can edit the text.

You can now send the message as described on page 42.

Sending a text message to an e-mail address

You can send a text message to an e-mail address. To do this you should write the recipient's e-mail address at the start of the text message and send this text message to the call number of the e-mail service of your SMS send centre.

Entering the e-mail address at the start of the text message

Enter the recipient's e-mail address at the start of your text message. Use a space to separate the e-mail address from the message text (e. g. for "Anny Way", Deutsche Telekom) or, if required for other providers, by inserting a colon.

You can save the text temporarily with **MENU**, ⬇ **Save TextOK**.

Gigaset C1:

Enter the "@" character using the hash key (#) (press x 2), the colon using the key (0+) (press 8 times), and the space with (1∞) (press once).

Gigaset C2:

You can do this using the (page 109) predictive text.

If predictive text is **on**, enter "@" by giving the hash key (#) 1 long and 1 short press.

If the predictive text feature is **deactivated** enter the character "@" using the hash key (#) (press 2 times), the colon using the (0+) key (press 8 times) and the space character using the (1∞) (press once).

Precondition: You are writing a text message (page 41) and the input field is open.

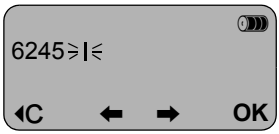
	Enter the full e-mail address and end it with a space or a colon.

Entering the text of the message

	Enter the text. The text is always displayed **on one line**. E-mail address, space, SMS text (example).
MENU	Press display key to open menu.
Send Text **OK**	Confirm.

Sending a text message as an e-mail

You must send the text messages to the **number for the e-mail service of your send centre**. The number for the "Anny Way" SMS centre is 6245, and for Deutsche Telekom it is 8000.

	Enter the number of the e-mail service. 
MENU	Press display key to open menu.
Send Text **OK**	Confirm.

Receiving text messages, incoming message list

Notes on receiving a text message

New SMS are signalled to all handsets with the same receive MSN (depending on the features offered by the individual handset) by a message in the display, by flashing of the message key ✉ and by an advisory tone. The date and time (transferred from the SMS centre) are indicated for each SMS received.

The incoming message list contains only those text messages sent to a receive MSN to which your handset is assigned. If no MSN's have been set up, then all text messages received are shown on all handsets.

In the incoming message list new (unread) messages come before the old messages. New and old messages are sorted according to their time of arrival: oldest new message, ... , newest message, oldest old message, ..., newest old message.

Gigaset C1:

New text messages are indicated by the icon ✉ and by an advisory tone.

Gigaset C2:

New text messages are indicated by the message **New messages**, by the ✉ key flashing and by an advisory tone.

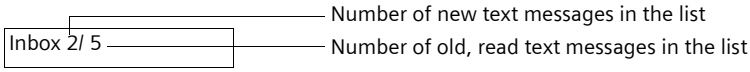
Linked text messages are displayed as **one** SMS. If an incoming linked message is too long or has not transferred completely, it will be split into individual messages and stored in the incoming message list.

Opening the incoming message list

The **incoming message list** shows you:

- all received messages,
- messages that could not be sent despite several attempts. These messages are all stored with an error status (page 50).

The text message list is displayed, for example, as follows



Opening with the message key

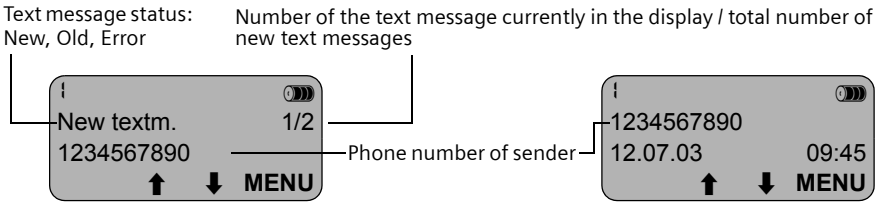
Precondition: There is at least one **new** message in the list.

✉	Press the message key. If there are no new calls/messages in the other lists, then the first **new** text message is opened immediately. Otherwise:
↓ Inbox **OK**	If necessary, select and confirm. The incoming message list is opened and the first **new** message is displayed.

Opening with the menu

MENU	Open the menu.
SMS **OK**	Confirm.
↓ Inbox **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

A new text message is displayed, for example, as follows:



You can toggle between the displays using display keys ↓ and ↑ .

If the SMS memory is full and the SMS centre is unable to transfer any more, an appropriate message will appear on the screen. Press **OK** to confirm and delete messages you no longer require from the incoming and outgoing message list (see also page 43 and page 48). The SMS centre will then re-transmit the text message.

Reading and deleting text messages in the incoming message list

Precondition: You have opened the incoming message list (page 46).

↓	Select SMS.
MENU	Open the menu.
either ...	**Read SMS:**
Read textmessage **OK**	Confirm. Use ↓ to view the continuation of the text message in the display.
or ...	**Delete SMS:**
↓ **Delete textmess.** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Hold down (return to idle status).

Once you have opened a new message it acquires the status **Old**.

Deleting the entire incoming message list

This function deletes **all new and old** text messages in the incoming message list.
Precondition: You have opened the incoming message list (page 46).

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Delete list** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
	Long press (back to idle status).

Replying to or forwarding text messages

While you read a text message you can use the following functions:

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
either ...	**Reply to an incoming message:**
Reply **OK**	Confirm. You can reply to the message immediately in the input field.
or ...	**Answer "Yes":**
↓ **Answer: Yes** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Answer "No":**
↓ **Answer: No** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Edit the incoming message and return it:**
↓ **Use text** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Edit text.
... then	
MENU	Press display key to open menu.

Send **OK**	Confirm and then send the message as described on page 42.
or ...	
⬇ **Save Text** **OK**	Select and confirm to store the entry.

To forward a text message, open the menu with **MENU** and select the **Send** option. Now send the message as described on page 42.

Calling back the text message sender

Open the SMS incoming message list (page 46). **Now**:

⬇	Select entry.
either ...	
✆	Press the talk key.
or ...	
MENU	Open the menu.
Dial number **OK**	Select.
or ...	**Dial using network provider's prefix:**
MENU	Open the menu.
⬇ **NET list** **OK**	Open the speed dial list (network provider list).
⬇ **OK**	Select entry and confirm. The network provider's prefix is put in front of the phone number.

Callback begins at once.

i	To a PABX: The access code (outside line code) is automatically put before the phone number (page 97).

Adding a text message sender's telephone number to the directory

Precondition: You have opened the incoming message list and selected a message (page 46).

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
⬇ **Copy to dir.** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Confirm the telephone number.
	Enter a name (up to 16- characters) (for inputting text see page 105).
MENU	Press display key to open menu.
Save Text **OK**	Confirm. The entry is stored.
⏻	**Long** press (back to idle status).

i	The number of the text message recipient must be stored in the directory together with its area code (prefix) so that it can also be used for sending text messages.

Text messages to a PABX

You can only receive a text message when the Calling Line Identification is forwarded to the extension of the PABX (CLIP).

The CLIP of the phone number of the SMS centre is evaluated in your telephone.

If your phone is connected to a PABX, you may have to prefix the number of the SMS centre with an access code (this depends on your PABX). You can store the access code in your base (page 97).

If in doubt, you can test your PABX for example by sending a text message to your own number and adding the access code before the number of the SMS centre. If you do not receive the message, send another one, this time without the access code.

When you send messages, your sender number may be sent without your extension number. The recipient cannot reply to you directly in this case.

Errors when sending and receiving a text message

Errors when sending a text message

Text messages that **cannot** be sent are assigned an error status e.g. **"Error FD"** and are saved in the **incoming message list**.

The following error codes are displayed:

Error code	Description
E0	Calling Line Identification is permanently deactivated (page 17).
FE	Error occurred during message transfer.
FD	Connection to SMS centre failed. Text messages cannot be sent or received if the number of an SMS centre is missing or incorrectly stored. Check that the number of the SMS centre has been correctly stored.
C2	Wrong recipient phone number.

You can display information about the cause of errors on the screen.

Precondition: You have opened the incoming message list (page 46).

⬇	Scroll to the text message you were unable to send.
⬇ **Error status** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The cause of the error appears in the display.
OK	Now press the display key to return to the incoming message list.

Errors when receiving a text message

A message appears on the screen if your phone cannot receive any more text messages.

You **cannot** receive text messages under the following conditions:

- call forwarding has been activated with **Immediately**,
- the memory (incoming and outgoing message lists) is full.

Self-help with error messages

Error Message	Possible Cause	Remedy
You cannot send messages.	Calling Line Identification (CLIP) has been withheld permanently.	Permit Calling Line Identification (CLIP) again (page 17).
	Message transfer was interrupted (e. g. by an incoming call).	Re-send the message.
	No number or an invalid number is entered for the SMS centre activated as the send centre.	Enter phone number (page 38).
You receive a message whose text is incomplete.	Your phone's memory is full.	Delete some old messages (page 48).
The message is played back.	Your terminal is stored in the database of your SMS provider as having no fixed network SMS functionality, i. e. you are no longer registered with the provider.	Register the terminal (again) for SMS reception. For the "Anny Way" SMS service centre: send a blank text message to number 2547. For Deutsche Telekom: send a text message with the message REGISTER to 8888.
Messages are only received during the day.	If your SMS network provider's database does not yet know that your terminal supports fixed network SMS functionality, then it will only attempt to deliver messages during the day.	Register the terminal (again) for SMS reception to get it reassigned in the database.

Operating the answering machine directly

at the base:	CX150isdn	SX150isdn	CX253isdn	SX255isdn	SX353isdn

The ISDN phone has three answering machines (AM1, AM2, AM3), each of which you can operate and set independently. You can operate the answering machines either directly via a registered handset (via the menu) or by remote control (internal or external call to the answering machine, see operating instructions for the base).

Which answering machine you can operate directly using your handset depends on the assignment of the receive MSNs:

There is no MSN assigned to the answering machines (factory setting):

- AM1 answers all calls.
- Each answering machine can be set, operated and played back from each handset/terminal.

One or more MSNs are assigned to each answering machine:

Each answering machine can only be set and played back using handsets/terminals with the same receive MSN.

Exception: If a receive MSN is assigned exclusively to one answering machine, and not to any other handset/terminal, then this answering machine can be operated by all internal users.

i	If an answering machine is currently being used by one user (directly or by remote control), then no other user can access the answering machine during this time.

The date and time of arrival of each message is logged if you have previously set this function (page 74).

You can hide answering machines that you do not wish to use (page 63).

Definitions of terms used below:

Message	Message that a caller leaves on the answering machine.
Memos	"Spoken notes" that you can record on the answering machine for members of your family or office colleagues, for example.
AM mode	Answer and record or announce only.
Answer and record mode	The caller hears the announcement and may then leave a message.
Announce only mode	The caller hears the announcement but cannot leave a message.

Selecting an answering machine

MENU		Open the menu.
↓ **Voice Mail**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **AM1**	**OK**	If necessary, select answering machine and confirm, e. g. **AM1**.
OK		If AM lock is set (page 66): enter the answering machine PIN and confirm.

The list of answering machines **AM1**, **etc.,** is also opened if you press and hold the number key 1. The list only contains the answering machines set to be shown on the handset. If only one answering machine can be reached via the handset, or only one answering machine is set to be shown, the list is skipped.

If the answering machine menu has not been opened and instead the message **"No AM allocated"** is displayed, then you cannot use the answering machine directly with the handset (page 52). If necessary, change the assignment of the incoming MSNs (page 83).

Activating/deactivating the answering machine

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

either ...		**Activate the answering machine:**
↓ **Activate?**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...		**Deactivate the answering machine:**
↓ **Deactivate?**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

When the answering machine is activated the remaining memory (in %) is displayed on the screen.

Which AM mode the answering machine assumes after activation (answer and record mode or announce only mode) depends on the announcement selected (page 54).

You can only activate an answering machine in answer and record mode if there is memory still available. If the remaining memory is less than 60 seconds, you will be prompted to delete old messages. If the remaining memory is less than 10 seconds the answering machine is started in announce only mode.

If the answering machine assigned to a handset is activated, the ∞ icon is shown on the screen. The ∞ flashes when a recording is in progress.

Selecting announce only and AM mode

You can activate **Announcement 1**, **Announcement 2** or **Announcem. only** for each answering machine. As supplied, the three announcements already include standard messages. You can delete the standard messages and record your own announcements (page 54).

When you select an announcement you also determine in which AM mode the answering machine is to run (page 52).

- **Announcement 1**, **Announcement 2:** answer and record mode.
- **Announcem. only:** announce only mode

In answer and record mode a **Concl.announcem** is given automatically at the end of a recording providing you have recorded a concluding announcement (page 54).

When the phone is supplied **Announcement 1** is selected. The **Concl.announcem** contains nothing.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Announcements** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Announcement 2**	Select announcement, e. g. **Announcement 2** (✓ = set).
MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Select **OK**	Confirm. The announcement set previously is deactivated automatically.

i	The answering machine switches automatically from answer and record mode to announce only mode when the memory is full. As soon as memory space is available again (e. g., because you have deleted some messages) the answering machine automatically switches back to recording mode.

Recording/changing announcements

You can record the following announcements: **Announcement 1, Announcement 2, Announcem. only** and **Concl.announcem**.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Announcements** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Announcement 2**	Select announcement, e. g. **Announcement 2** (✓ = currently activated).
MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
↓ **Record** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Press the display key to start recording.
	Say the announcement message.
OK	Press the display key to end the recording. The announcement is repeated for you to check.

Recording is automatically terminated if:

- you pause for more than 8 seconds when recording your announcement
- the memory is full. Delete old messages or announcements you no longer require.

The announcement will not be stored if you press the end call key during the recording or repeat playback.

Playing back/deleting announcements

Only announcements that have been recorded can be deleted. The standard message cannot be deleted.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Announcements** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Announcement 2**	Select announcement, e. g. **Announcement 2** (✓ = activated).
MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
either ...	**Play back the announcement:**
↓ **Play back** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Delete the announcement:**
↓ **Delete** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.

Recording memos

Memos are "spoken notes" recorded, for example, for members of your family. A memo is played back, saved and deleted in the same way as a message. If a new memo arrives the ✉ icon is displayed on all the handsets assigned to the answering machine.

You can also record memos when the answering machine is deactivated.

When the memory is full, and when there are pauses in the recording longer than 8 seconds, the recording of the memo is cancelled automatically.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Memos** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Record memo** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Press the display key to start recording.
	Say the memo message.
OK	Press the display key to end the recording.

To stop recording, press the end call key ☎.

Two-way recording

You can make a two-way recording of a call. The two-way recording can then be played back or deleted like a message.

During a call:

MENU		Open the menu.
↓ **Record**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **AM1**	**OK**	Select an answering machine and confirm, e. g. **AM1**. The two-way recording starts at once.
OK		Press the display key to end the two-way recording.

i	The two-way recording is also ended when the call ends or when the memory is full. You should inform the person you are speaking to in advance that you are making a two-way recording.

Picking up a call while the answering machine is responding

You can pick up a call, even if the answering machine has already switched itself on (the ∞ icon flashes on the screen), or your announcement is still running, or the caller is already leaving a message. When you pick up the call the recording stops.

Preconditions:

- The same receive MSN is assigned to both the answering machine and the handset picking up the call (page 62).
- Automatic listen in is not activated on any other handset (page 66).

Automatic call pick up is activated (see page 67, factory default):

✆ 🔊	Press the talk or handsfree key. You pick up the call.

Automatic pickup is deactivated:

✆ 🔊		Press the talk or handsfree key.
either ...		
MENU		Open the menu.
Open listening	**OK**	Confirm to listen in. The caller cannot hear you.
or ...		
MENU		Open the menu.
↓ **Accept**	**OK**	Select and confirm to pick up the call.

In order to call another external party while the answering machine is recording a call you must deactivate the automatic pickup (page 67).

Playing messages

The ✉ icon is shown on the handset screen to indicate the arrival of a new message. On the Gigaset C1, the Message key ✉ also flashes. Pressing the messages key ✉ gives you direct access to the new messages. You can also open the lists of new and old messages via the menu.

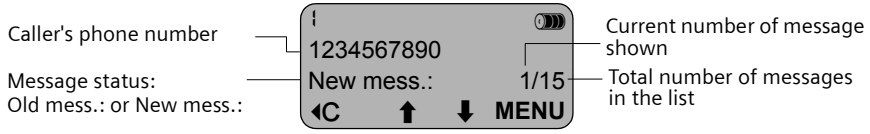
Opening lists with the menu:

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

Messages **OK**	Confirm.

Playback starts with the oldest message. When all the messages have been played back you will be asked whether you wish to delete the messages.

The following is shown on the screen for each message:



The date and time of the recording are stated when the message is played back providing this function is set (page 64).

If automatic pause is activated the answering machine switches to pause mode after playing back a message. Press the ↓ display key (or **MENU Continue OK)** to continue playback.

Jumping to the next or previous message during playback

↓	Go to the next message.
↑	Jump to the beginning of the current message.
↑ ↑	Jump to the previous message.

Switching to pause mode during playback, ending pause mode

MENU	Switch to pause mode.
Continue **OK**	Confirm. Playback continues.

Returning a call during playback

You can call back a caller immediately while a message is being played.
Precondition: The caller's number has been identified.
During playback:

MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
either ...	**Call back:**
↓ **Call back** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Call back using the network provider's phone number:**
↓ **NET list** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **OK**	Select the network provider's number and confirm.

Playing a message to another caller

During an external call you can play messages from the answering machine to the person you are calling.
Precondition: The same receive MSN is assigned to the handset and the answering machine.
During the call:

MENU	Press the display key to open the menu.
↓ **Play message** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **AM1** **OK**	If necessary, select answering machine and confirm, e. g. **AM1**.
OK	If AM lock is set (page 66): Enter the AM PIN and confirm. Information about the oldest message is displayed on the screen. The message is **not** played back.
↓ **MENU**	Select message and open the submenu.
↓ **Playback** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The playback starts. The other caller can listen in.
	End playback:
MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
↓ **Exit** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The playback stops. You can speak to the caller again.

Playing back memos

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Memos** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Play memo** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ ↑	Jump to the next or previous memo.

You can set the playback speed for messages/memos to four levels, **Slow**, **Normal speed**, **Fast** or **Very fast**. When the phone is supplied **Normal speed** is set for all answering machines.

During playback:

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Speed** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Fast** **OK**	Select the speed level and confirm, e.g. **Fast** (✓ = set).

Playback continues at the new speed. All subsequent messages/memos are played back at this speed until you make another change.

Deleting messages/memos

You can delete messages or memos individually or all together. Only messages and memos that have been listened to for at least 3 seconds can be deleted. These recordings are then described as old.

Deleting single messages/memos

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

either ...		**Delete a single message:**
Messages	OK	Confirm. Message playback begins.
↓ ↑		Select message.
MENU		Press the display key to open the submenu.
↓ Delete message	OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The current message is deleted.
or ...		**Delete a single memo:**
↓ Memos	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ Play memo	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ ↑		Select memo.
MENU		Press the display key to open the submenu.
↓ Delete curr.memo	OK	Select the menu item and confirm. The current memo is deleted.

Deleting all old messages/memos

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

either ...		**Delete all old messages:**
Messages	OK	Confirm. Message playback begins.
MENU		Press the display key to open the submenu.
↓ Del.old messages	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Yes		Confirm.
or ...		**Delete all old memos:**
↓ Memos	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ Play memo	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
MENU		Press the display key to open the submenu.
↓ Delete old memos	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Yes		Confirm.

Marking an old message or memo as "new"

You can mark messages/memos you have already played back as "new". This message/memo is then displayed on the handset as a new entry with the ✉ icon on the screen.

Pressing the messages key ✉ gives you direct access to the message/memo once more.

During playback:

MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
↓ **Status to 'new'** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The current recording is given the status "new".

If other recordings are available, playback continues.

Adding a number to the directory

While a message is being played back you can display the caller's phone number and store it in the directory.

Precondition: The caller's number has been identified.

During playback:

MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
↓ **Save number** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Confirm the telephone number.
	Enter name.
MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Store **OK**	Confirm.

Checking messages/memos

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Status** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	**Display number of new and old messages:**
Messages **OK**	Confirm. The number of new and old messages is displayed.
or ...	**Display number of new and old memos:**
↓ **Memos** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The number of new and old memos is displayed.

Setting the answering machine

at the base:	CX150isdn	SX150isdn	CX253isdn	SX255isdn	SX353isdn

Once you have connected your telephone your answering machine is ready for use.

Answering machine AM1 is set to be shown and activated. It displays all messages (on all receive MS's). AM1 can be played back and set from all handsets (factory default). All phrases in the answering machine are in English.

As supplied, AM2 and AM3 are hidden (page 63) and are deactivated. To use them, they must be shown, and all answering machines shown must be assigned their own receive MSN.

You can configure AM1, AM2 and AM3 separately.

Assigning a receive MSN

You can assign one or more receive MSNs to each (shown) answering machine (AM1, AM2, AM3). However, each MSN can only be assigned to one answering machine (only one recording can be running at any one time).

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Setup user** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device **OK**	Confirm.
↓	Select answering machine, **INT 91: AM 91** for AM1, **INT 92: AM 92** for AM2 or **INT 93: AM 93** for AM3.
MENU	Open the submenu.
↓ **Receive MSN** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **OK**	Select the receive MSN and confirm, e.g. **MSN: Anna**. Only the MSNs that are still not assigned to an answering machine are offered. Repeat this procedure for all receive MSNs that you wish to assign to the answering machine.

Once an answering machine has been assigned to a receive MSN it can only be set and operated via handsets/terminals to which the same receive MSN is assigned.

Hiding/showing an answering machine

If you only want to operate one or two answering machines for your connection you can remove the other answering machine(s) from all displays and menus. When supplied, AM1 is set to show, AM2 and AM3 are hidden.

When hidden there must be no messages or memos remaining in the answering machine:

- If there are new messages/memos you have not yet played back on the answering machine, you will be notified when you try to hide it. The answering machine will continue to be **shown**.
- If, when you wish to hide an answering machine, it still contains old messages/ memos that have already been played back, you will be asked if you wish to delete the old recordings. The answering machine will only be hidden if you confirm with **OK** .

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Setup user** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device **OK**	Confirm.
↓	Select the internal numbers for the answering machine (**INT 91**, **INT 92** or **INT 93**).
MENU	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Hide answering machine:**
↓ **Hide AM?** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Show answering machine:**
↓ **Show AM?** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

When an activated answering machine is hidden it is deactivated. When it is set to show again, the answering machine returns to the status it had before it was hidden.

Specifying the number of rings before the answering machine starts

You can set when you want the answering machine to activate (after how many rings). The options are: **1 ring tone**, **2 ring tone**, ..., **9 ring tone**. Instead of a set number of rings, you can also set the **charge saving** setting **Automatic 2/4** (factory default). In this setting the answering machine activates **automatically**:

- after 2 rings if there are new messages,
- after 4 rings if there are no new messages.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **No. of rings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Automatic 2/4**	**OK**	Select and confirm number of rings or **Automatic 2/4** (✓ = set).

Activating/deactivating voice announcement of date and time

You can have the recording date and -time (time stamp) announced when each message/memo is played back (activated when supplied).

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Message/Memo	**OK**	Confirm.
↓ **Time stamp**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

Setting the recording time and recording quality

You can set the maximum length of a message and its recording quality. The recording quality determines the total recording time of your answering machine.

On the **High quality** setting the total recording time is up to 12 min., on **Long recording** (standard quality, generally adequate) up to 25 min. When supplied, the recording quality **Long recording** and the recording time **Maximum** are already set.

i	The recording of a call ends: ◆ after a pause in speaking lasting more than 8 seconds; ◆ at the end of a call; the caller terminates the connection; ◆ after the set maximum recording time has expired, on **Maximum** setting, when the memory is full.

Setting the recording time

You can limit the maximum length of a message to**1 minute**, **2 minutes** or **3 minutes**. If you set **Maximum** for the recording time (factory setting) then it is "unlimited" (until the memory is full).

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ Settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
Message/Memo	OK	Confirm.
Message length	OK	Confirm.
↓ 3 minutes	OK	Select the recording time and confirm, e.g. **3 minutes** (✓ = activated).

i	Once the recording period has expired, the concluding announcement is played automatically if stored. Then the connection is closed down. There is no limit to the duration of memo recordings.

Setting recording quality

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ Settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ AM quality	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...		**Set high quality:**
High quality	OK	Confirm.
or ...		**Set long recording:**
↓ Long recording	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.

Activating/deactivating automatic pause

If automatic pause is activated the answering machine switches to pause mode after playing back a message or memo. The next message will not be played back until you press the ↓ display key.

When the phone is supplied, automatic pause is deactivated.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ Settings	OK	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ Automatic pause	OK	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

Locking the answering machine, defining AM PIN

You can protect your answering machine against unauthorised access. To do this, define an AM PIN (Personal Identification Number) and activate the AM lock. The settings may then only be changed and the messages played back after the PIN has been entered.

i	The answering machine can only be controlled remotely if you have defined an AM PIN.

Entering and changing the AM PIN

When supplied, the AM PIN is preconfigured to 0000.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Change AM-PIN**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK		Enter new AM PIN (up to 8 digits) and confirm.
OK		Repeat the new AM PIN and confirm.

If you make an error when keying in the AM PIN you can delete your entry using the ◂C key and enter it again.

Activating/deactivating the AM lock

When the phone is supplied the answering machine lock is deactivated.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **AM lock**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = lock set).

Activating/deactivating automatic listen in on the handset

You can set your answering machine to switch a handset assigned to it automatically to listen in when a message is recorded.

When supplied, automatic listen in is deactivated.

Assigning a handset

Only one handset may be assigned to an answering machine. You can choose a handset to which one of the answering machine's receive MSNs is assigned. Only terminals that support handsfree talking are displayed. Auto answer (page 67) must be activated.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Aut. listen in**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

↓ **Select HS**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓	**OK**	Select the handset and confirm, e.g. **Int13: Anna**.

Activating/deactivating listen in

You can only activate the listen in function if a handset has been assigned to the answering machine.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Aut. listen in**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...		**Activate listen in:**
Activate?	**OK**	Confirm.
or ...		**Deactivate listen in:**
Deactivate?	**OK**	Confirm.

Activating/deactivating automatic pickup

With automatic pickup you can take a call directly from the answering machine (announcement or recording is running) on any handset or by lifting a receiver (telephone with cord) providing the same receive MSN is assigned to all devices. You just need to press the talk key ✆ on the handset. The recording of the call will then stop.

As supplied, automatic pickup is activated.

Precondition: The same receive MSN is assigned to both the answering machine and the handset/terminal.

i	If automatic listen in is activated for a handset (page 66) then the call can only be taken on this handset.

MENU		Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **System settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **AM auto. pickup**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

Activating/deactivating automatic notification via text message

If you have received new messages on the answering machine, your telephone can automatically send a text message to you on an external phone number (e. g. to a mobile phone). A text message of this kind will read, for example:

New message: 01712205625 for office at 18:27 hrs on TH, 19.07. You have 1 new AM message(s).

Automatic text message notification is not available in all countries.

i	An SMS send centre must be activated to send the text message (page 39).

Entering destination phone number for a text message

No destination number has been stored.

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **SMS notificat.**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
		Enter destination number (up to 20 digits).
MENU		Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry	**OK**	Confirm.
		Hold down (return to idle status).

Changing or deleting the destination number for a text message

Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **SMS notificat.**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
MENU		Press the display key to open the submenu.
either ...		**Enter or change the destination number:**
Change number	**OK**	Confirm.
		Change the destination number.
MENU		Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry	**OK**	Confirm.
or ...		**Delete the destination number:**
↓ **Delete number**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
		Hold down (return to idle status).

Activating/deactivating text message notification

You can only activate text message notification if a destination number is stored.
Precondition: You have selected an answering machine (page 53).

↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **SMS notificat.** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu. 2 minutes
either ...	**Activate text message notification:**
↓ **Activate?** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Deactivate text message notification:**
↓ **Deactivate?** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

Using several handsets

Using a handset as a room monitor

on handset:	C2

With this function, a previously stored internal or external number is called when a set noise level in the room is reached (the baby cries). When you answer the call you hear the noise in the baby's room. The room monitor **remains activated** on the handset even after you hang up.

The handset should be between 1 and 2 metres away from the baby. The microphone must be directed towards the baby.

When the room monitor is activated, incoming calls to the handset which is near the baby are indicated **without a ring tone**, they are just shown on the display. The display and the keypad are not illuminated.

When entering an external phone number, check the following:

the number where the room monitor call is forwarded must not be blocked by an activated answering machine.

ϟ	**Always check the settings of the room monitor before you leave, e. g. sensitivity and phone line.**

i	◆ If you redirect your room monitor to an external number, then you should tell that number's owner. ◆ A room monitor stops calling an **external** number after about 90 seconds. The room monitor stops calling an **internal** number (handset) after about 3 minutes. ◆ After the room monitor makes a call, the room monitor is blocked for 2 minutes. ◆ The room monitor function severely curtails the handset's operating time. If possible, place any handset that is in the vicinity of a baby in the charger. This ensures that the battery does not discharge. ◆ The room monitor function can also be used in Walk and Talk mode (page 72).

Activating the room monitor function and entering the "call to" number for the first time

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Additional Features** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Room Monitor **OK**	Confirm.
either ...	**Enter an internal number as the "call to" number:**
↓ **Call Internal** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **OK**	Select the handset and confirm.
or ...	**Enter an external number as the "call to" number:**
↓ **Call External** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter phone number and confirm.

If the room monitor is activated, you go straight to the room monitor setting when you press the display key **MENU** (open menu).

i	◆ You can pick the external number from the directory. Instead of keying in the number, press the ☎ key, use ↓ to select an entry and confirm your choice with **OK**. ◆ If you enter an **external** number as the destination number, only the **last 4 digits** will appear in the input field.

Setting the room monitor's sensitivity

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Additional Features** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Room Monitor **OK**	Confirm.
↓ **Level** **OK**	If necessary, select and confirm.
↓ **OK**	Select **Low** or **High** and confirm. The selection is checked ✓.

Deactivating the room monitor

The room monitor function must be deactivated on the handset that is in the baby's room.

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
Room Monitor off **OK**	Confirm.

Deactivating the room monitor remotely

You can deactivate the room monitor remotely. Take the call from the room monitor and press 9WXYZ #. The room monitor function will deactivate about 90 seconds after the call ends. The room monitor will make no further calls. The other room monitor functions on the handset (e. g. no ringer) will remain activated until you press **MENU** and **OK** on the handset that is in the baby's room.

Setting the Walk and Talk mode

on handset:	C2

The Walk and Talk function allows two C1 handsets to communicate with each other no matter how far they are from the base.

Example: You go on holiday and take two handsets with Walk and Talk functionality with you. Set the Walk and Talk function **on both handsets**. You can now communicate using the handsets.

Precondition:

- Both handsets have been registered to the same base **or**
- Both handsets are registered to different bases and both are set to **Best Base** (page 15) **or**
- One of the handsets is not registered to any base and the registered handset is set to **Best Base or**
- Neither handset is registered to a base.

i	In Walk and Talk mode ◆ the maximum range between handsets is 300 metres outdoors, ◆ the handsets cannot be reached by incoming calls, ◆ handset operating times are severely curtailed.

Activating/deactivating the Walk and Talk mode

	Activate the Walk and Talk mode:
MENU	Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Additional Features** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Walk and Talk** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
	Deactivate the Walk and Talk mode:
MENU	Press display key to open menu.
Walk and Talk Off **OK**	Confirm.

If you press the talk key or the handsfree key when you are in Walk and Talk mode, the call will go to all handsets that are in Walk and Talk mode. The connection is made with the first handset to answer the Walk and Talk call.

i	◆ Ring and advisory tones are set in exactly the same way as if your handsets at home were in range of the base (page 91). ◆ "Activate/deactivate ringer" (page 92) and "Activate/deactivate keypad lock" (page 10) are available in the Walk and Talk mode. ◆ The Walk and Talk mode is retained even when you switch your handset off and back on.

Date and Time

Setting the date and the time

Correct date and time settings are essential if, for example, you want to know exactly when calls were received.

The first time you make a call on your phone, the date and time are transmitted by the exchange. However, you can also set the date and time on the handset.

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Calender/Clock** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Date/Time** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
... then	
	Enter the date:
OK	Enter day/month/year and confirm. **Example:** For 20.05.2003, enter 2ABC 0+ 0+ 5JKL 0+ 3DEF.
	Enter the time:
OK	Enter hours/minutes and confirm. **Example:** For 9.35, enter 0+ 9WXYZ 3DEF 5JKL.
	Only when the 12-hour display is selected:
↓ **OK**	Select a.m. or p.m. and confirm.
⏻	**Long** press (back to idle status).

Changing the time mode

You can choose between the 12 hour and the 24 hour display (factory setting) for the time (a.m. = 1st half of the day; p.m. = 2nd half of the day).

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Calender/Clock** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Time Mode** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	
↓ **12 hour** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = On).
or ...	
24 hour **OK**	Confirm (✓ = On).
⏻	**Long** press (back to idle status).

Setting the alarm clock

on handset:	C2

You can use your handset as an alarm clock.
Precondition: You have set the date and time (page 74).

Activating/deactivating the alarm clock and setting the wake-up time

		Switching the alarm clock on:
⏰		Press the display key.
Alarm Clock	**OK**	Confirm (✓ = On).
		Set the wake-up time:
OK		Enter hours/minutes and confirm. **Example:** For 7.15, enter 0+ 7PQRS 1 QD 5JKL. The **top line** of the screen displays the alarm clock icon ⏰.
		When the 12-hour display is selected:
↓ **am**	**OK**	Select a.m. or p.m. and confirm (✓ = On), e.g. **am**.
or ...		**Deactivate the alarm clock:**
⏰		Press the display key.
Alarm Clock	**OK**	Confirm (✓ disappears).
☎		**Long** press (back to idle status).

i	◆ A wake-up call only sounds when the handset is in the idle status and the room monitor function is not activated. ◆ To find out how to set the wake-up volume and melody, turn to (page 91). ◆ When you deactivate the alarm clock the ⏰ icon will only go out if there is no active appointment.

Cancelling a wake-up call

A wake-up call sounds on the handset with its selected ringer melody, and **Alarm Clock** appears in the display. Press **any key** to cancel the wake-up call. The alarm clock is still switched on.

Setting an appointment

on handset:	C2

You can use your handset to remind yourself of an appointment. To do this, you have to save the times.

Activating/deactivating the appointment function

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Calender/Clock** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Set Appointment **OK**	Confirm (✓ = On).
OK	Confirm again if an appointment is activated.
	Enter the date:
OK	Enter the day/month and confirm. **Example:** For 20.05. enter 2ABC 0+ 0+ 5JKL.
	Enter the time:
OK	Enter hours/minutes and confirm. **Example:** For 9:05 enter 0+ 9WXYZ 0+ 5JKL.
	Specifying the appointment:
OK	Enter a name (up to 16 characters) and confirm (for inputting text see page 105). Delete an existing appointment.
	Long press (back to idle status). The **top line** displays the alarm clock icon.

i	◆ If you do not give the appointment a name, its date and time will appear in the display when it is due. ◆ To find out how to set the wake-up volume and melody, turn to page 91. ◆ If you are using the 12 hour clock, select a.m. or p.m. with ↓ and press **OK** to confirm. ◆ An appointment will be displayed only if the handset is in idle status. An appointment is not displayed when the room monitor is active or while a phone call is in progress.

Deactivating an appointment call

An appointment is signalled with the selected ringer melody (page 91).

OK	Press the display key. The alarm clock icon ⏰ disappears when the alarm clock is not activated.

Cancelling an appointment

MENU		Open the menu.
↓ **Calender/Clock**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Set Appointment	**OK**	Confirm (✓ disappears).

Viewing an appointment you have not kept

If the handset reminds you of an appointment but you do not keep it, a message appears in the display together with the name of the appointment. If you did not name the appointment, its date and time are displayed. Press **any key** to cancel the message.

Security settings

Changing the system PIN

You can protect the following settings against unauthorised access using the system PIN (Personal Identification Number):

- Call forwarding to an external number
  (**MENU** ↓ **Base Settings** / ↓ **Ext. call forw.**)
- SMS service centres, user configurations, security, ISDN, and system settings
  (**MENU** ↓ **Base Settings** / ↓ **Settings**)

The system PIN will not work with the number 0000.

When supplied, the system PIN is preconfigured to 0000.

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Providing you choose a number other than 0000: Enter PIN and confirm.
Security **OK**	Confirm.
↓ **Change PIN** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter new system PIN (up to 8 digits, 0 to 9) and confirm.
OK	Repeat the new system PIN and confirm.
	Hold down (return to idle status).

!	Memorise the new system PIN! If you forget it the phone will require expert intervention. If this happens, contact the Siemens Hotline.

Emergency numbers

The emergency numbers relevant to each country have been entered in the base station. These cannot be edited or deleted. You may enter five emergency numbers of your own choice.

i	An emergency number may also be dialled from a handset with limited authorisation.

Setting up, editing, reading and deleting personal emergency numbers

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	If required, enter the PIN and confirm.
Security **OK**	Confirm.
↓ **Emergency nos.**	Select. The emergency numbers list is opened.
↓ **<no entry>**	Select list entry, e. g. **<no entry>**.
MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
either ...	**Set up or edit emergency number:**
Change number **OK**	Confirm.
	Enter new emergency number (up to 32 digits) or edit existing emergency number. You can also copy the number from the directory ↓ or speed dial list ⊙.
MENU	Press the display key to open the submenu.
Save entry **OK**	Confirm.
or ...	**View emergency number:**
↓ **Display number** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Delete emergency number:**
↓ **Delete number** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
⊙	Hold down (return to idle status).

i	If your phone is connected to a PABX you must enter the applicable access code (outside line code, e.g. 0; see page 97) before the emergency number. This also applies to emergency numbers you have preset and for which you need to re-enter as an alternative, for example, "0110" and "0112".

System settings

The abbreviations in brackets after the titles indicate the ISDN service concerned. Some services may only be used if they have been authorised by the network provider (there may be an extra charge).

Changing the name for an internal party

When the phone is supplied, all internal numbers are allocated the names **Int.11**, **Int.12** etc., according to their numbering. You can change these entries individually to suit your requirements.

MENU		Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK		Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **Setup user**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Setup device**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Int.11**		Select internal number, e. g. **Int.11**.
MENU		Open the submenu.
↓ **Name**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
MENU		Change the name and open the menu.
Save entry	**OK**	Confirm. The name is now shown in the internal list, including when an internal call is made from this internal number.

i	Since names are saved in the base station, another name can be allocated to a handset when registering to a different base. This makes it possible to recognise which base the handset is currently connected to.

Setting up/deleting an ISDN phone number (MSN)

Your ISDN connection offers you two telephone lines (B channels) that you can use at the same time. You can establish up to ten separate phone numbers (MSN) on your base station.

What is an MSN?

MSN = Multiple Subscriber Number. You can apply for up to ten different telephone numbers for one multiple ISDN connection. An MSN is one of the phone numbers assigned to you **without an area code**.

You telephone uses the MSN entirely as you require. The following differentiation is made:

- **Receive MSN:** Phone numbers you may be called on. You can assign the receive MSNs to specific internal users (terminals). Incoming calls are only forwarded to the terminals to which the relevant MSN has been assigned. Terminals are, for instance, handsets or answering machines.
- **Send MSN:** Phone numbers that are identified to the person you are calling. The network operator calculates charges based on the send MSNs. You can assign a fixed send MSN to each internal user.

Possible internal users are:

Depending on the functions provided by the base, you can assign internal phone numbers to the following internal users. Please refer to the operating instructions for the base for the internal phone numbers that are available.

- **Handsets**
- Base telephone (CX203isdn, CX253isdn, SX303isdn, SX353isdn)
- Analogue devices (SX205isdn, SX255isdn, SX303isdn, SX353isdn)
- PC via a USB connection (SX205isdn, SX255isdn, SX303isdn, SX353isdn)
- Bluetooth devices (SX303isdn, SX353isdn)
- **Data modules**
- **Answering machines** integrated in the base

Example of how to assign an MSN:

You have applied for four MSNs, two for business use (MSN1, MSN2) and two for private purposes (MSN3, MSN4). Four handsets are connected to a base. Two handsets (Int.11 and 12) and the answering machine AM 91 are intended for business use, and two handsets (Int.13 and 14) and the answering machine AM 92 are intended for private use.

Internal users		**Use**	**Receive MSN**	**Send MSN**
Handsets	Int.11, 12	Business	MSN1, MSN2	MSN1
Answering machine	AM 91		MSN1, MSN2	---
Handset	Int.13	Private	MSN3	MSN3
Handset	Int.14		MSN4	MSN4
Answering machine	AM 92		MSN3, MSN4	---

Setting up an ISDN phone number (MSN) / changing the name

All newly stored phone numbers are automatically assigned to all registered handsets.

Each newly set up phone number automatically gets its own ringer melody, which can be changed to suit your individual requirements (page 84).

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **ISDN settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Set up MSN** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓	Select MSN, e. g. **MSN1: Anna**.
MENU	Open the submenu.
Edit entry **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter phone number and confirm.
	Enter a name (up to 16 characters – optional) (for inputting text see page 105).
MENU	Open the submenu.
Save entry **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

Cancelling ISDN phone numbers (MSN)

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **ISDN settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Set up MSN** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓	Select MSN, e. g. **MSN1: Anna**.
MENU	Open the submenu.
↓ **Delete entry** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

i	If the MSN you have cancelled was the send MSN (page 83) of an internal user then a new send MSN (the MSN with the lowest ranked number) will automatically be assigned to this internal user.

Assigning a phone number (MSN)

You can assign certain individual phone numbers (MSN's) to registered terminals. When doing this determine

- which phone number makes a registered terminal ring (receive MSN)
- under which number an internal user dials (send MSN).

Assigning a receive MSN

As supplied, a newly registered handset will ring whenever a phone number you have set up is dialled.

If you want to assign the handset certain specific receive MSN's:

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **Setup user** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Setup device** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Int.11**	Select internal number for the handset, e. g. **Int.11**.
MENU	Open the submenu.
↓ **Receive MSN** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **OK**	Select MSN and confirm, e. g. **MSN1: Anna**.

Assigning a send MSN

When the phone is supplied no send MSN has been entered. The exchange provides the send MSN.

You can determine a send MSN for each internal user. This MSN is shown to the person you call and the call is also charged to this MSN.

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **Setup user** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Setup device** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Int.11**	Select internal number, e. g. **Int.11**.
MENU	Open the submenu.
↓ **Send MSN** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **OK**	Select MSN and confirm, e. g. **MSN1: Anna**.

Assigning an MSN a ringer melody

Each new receive MSN you set up is automatically given its own ringer melody, which you can change individually. For a receive MSN you can:

- Select one of the available ringer melodies. This means that all handsets will use this ringer melody to indicate an incoming call to a receive MSN.
- Set **handset external ringer**. Then the handsets assigned to the receive MSN will use the ringer melody set on the handset for external calls (page 91).

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **ISDN settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Set up MSN** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓	Select MSN, e. g. **MSN1: Anna**.
MENU	Open the submenu.
↓ **Ringer Melody: 5** **OK**	Select melody and confirm, e. g. **Ringer Melody: 5** (✓ = set).

Forwarding external calls – Call Forwarding (CF)

For each receive MSN you can store a destination number for each of the following conditions:

Immediately — **On busy** — **On no reply**

i	All three conditions can be activated at the same time.

Set up external call transfers are entered in a list. Active call transfers are identified in this list.

When the phone is supplied, external call forwarding is not set.

Setting up the forwarding destination

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Ext. call forw.** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78). The list of set up call transfers is displayed.
MENU	Open the submenu.
New entry **OK**	Confirm.
↓ **OK**	Select the receive MSN and confirm, e. g. **MSN1: Anna**.
↓ **Immediately** **OK**	Select condition and confirm, e. g. **Immediately**. You will be notified if you have selected an MSN for which another internal user has already set up call forwarding. You can either return to the selection of other settings with a **short** press on the end call key, or continue with **OK**.
MENU	Enter number and open the menu.
Save entry **OK**	Confirm.
Yes	Confirm to set up call forwarding.

Activating/deactivating external call forwarding

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Ext. call forw.** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓	Select call forwarding, e. g. **MSN1 to 22222**.
MENU	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Activate:**

↓ **Activate?** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...	**Deactivate:**
↓ **Deactivate?** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. You will be notified if you have selected call forwarding that another internal user has already set up. You can either return to the selection of other settings with a **short** press on the end call key, or continue with **OK**.

Editing an entry

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Ext. call forw.** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓	Select call forwarding, e. g. **MSN1 to 33333**.
MENU	Open the submenu.
↓ **Edit entry** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. You will be notified if you have selected call forwarding that another internal user has already set up. You can either return to the selection of other settings with a **short** press on the end call key, or continue with **OK**.
MENU	Enter the new number and open the menu.
Save entry **OK**	Confirm.
Yes	Confirm to set up call forwarding.

Deleting external call forwarding

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Ext. call forw.** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓	Select call forwarding, e. g. **MSN1 to 22222**.
MENU	Open the submenu.
↓ **Delete entry** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. You will be notified if you have selected call forwarding that another internal user has already set up. You can either return to the selection of other settings with a **short** press on the end call key, or continue with **OK**.

Activating/deactivating Call Waiting – (CW)

This function can be set up separately for each user. When call waiting is activated the caller will hear the ringing tone if you are already making a call. This call is announced both acoustically, and visually on your handset screen.
When call waiting is deactivated, the caller will hear the ringing tone if you are already making a call **and** other phones are assigned to this MSN.
When call waiting is deactivated, the caller will hear the busy tone if you are already making a call **and** yours is the only phone assigned to this MSN.

This function is activated when the phone is supplied. For call waiting with an external call see page 25.

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **Setup user** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Setup device** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Int.11**	Select internal number, e. g. **Int.11**.
MENU	Open the submenu.
↓ **Call waiting** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).

Configuring the answering machine on the network for fast access

at the base:	CX100isdn	SX100isdn	CX205isdn	CX203isdn	SX303isdn

Precondition: You cannot use your network provider's answering machine on the network unless you have **requested** this from your network provider.

As soon as the answering machine's phone number is entered on the network, the fast access capability is available to you: By pressing and holding the 1 key, you can dial the answering machine directly on the network.

Enter/delete phone number for the answering machine on the network

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **System settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Network Mailb.** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. If the phone number has been assigned, it will appear on the screen.
MENU	Open the submenu.
either ...	**Create or edit a number:**
Change number **OK**	Confirm.
	Enter or change a number for the answering machine on the network.
MENU	Open the submenu.
Save entry **OK**	Confirm.
or ...	**Delete number:**
↓ **Delete number** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

This setting is now valid for all registered handsets and the base.

Calling the answering machine on the network

Press 1 **and hold**. This connects you directly to the answering machine. If you now press the handsfree key, you can 'open listen' to the announcement of the answering machine and operate it easily and conveniently on the network.

Display/play back a message on the answering machine on the network

When a message arrives for you, you get a call from the answering machine on the network. If you have requested Calling Line Identification, the display shows e. g. the number 0800 330 2424, for the network mailbox. If you accept the call, the new messages are played back. If you do not accept the call, the number of the answering machine is stored in the list of missed calls on the network and the message key flashes.

Restoring the factory setting

All functions are restored to the factory settings. The system PIN is reset to "0000". All entries (caller list) are deleted.

i	Before resetting, deactivate all active call transfers! The handsets are still registered.

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **System settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Spec. function** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Factory setting** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Reset all** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

Individual handset settings

Your handset has default settings. You can change these settings individually.

Changing the display language

You can view the display texts in different languages.

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
⬇ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
⬇ **Language** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm. The current language is checked ✓ (the default setting is English).
⬇ **OK**	Select a language and confirm.
⏻	**Long** press (back to idle status).

i	◆ If you set the wrong language in error, press **MENU** 7PQRS 2ABC. Now select the correct language with ⬇ and press **OK** to confirm your choice. ◆ When you change the display language the character set can change too, e. g. for Russian.

Activating/deactivating Auto Answer

If you have activated this function, simply remove the handset from the base or the charger when you receive a call (factory setting: On).

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
⬇ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Auto Answer **OK**	Confirm to deactivate or activate the function (✓ = activated).
⏻	**Long** press (back to idle status).

Adjusting the loudspeaker volume

You can adjust the handsfree volume to five levels and the earpiece volume to three levels – even while an external call is in progress.

MENU		Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Audio Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Earpiece Volume	**OK**	Confirm. You hear the current setting.
➡ **OK**		Select the earpiece volume and confirm.
↓ **Handsfree Volume**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
➡ **OK**		Select the handsfree volume and confirm.
⌀		**Long** press (back to idle status).

Changing the ringer tone

You can set the ringer tone individually.

A range of options is available:

- Six volume levels:
  - Five volume levels (1–5; e. g. volume level 2 = ▂▄▁▁▁◿),
  - "Crescendo" call (6; the volume increases with each ring = ▁▂▃▄▅▟).
- Ten melodies (1–10; melodies 1–3 are the "classical ringer tones")

i	Setting the ringer melody on the handset is only effective, if the **handset external ringer** is set instead of a ringer melody (page 83) for the incoming MSN of the handset.

Changing the ringer melody

Gigaset C1:
You can set the ringer individually for an internal or an external call.

Gigaset C2:
You can set the ringer individually for an internal or external call, for a wake-up call or for an appointment.

MENU		Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Audio Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Ringer Melody**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...		**For external calls:**
External Calls	**OK**	Confirm.
or ...		**For internal calls:**
↓ **Internal Calls**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...		**For an appointment (on the C2; page 76):**

↓ **Appointment**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...		**For a wake-up call (on the C2; page 75):**
↓ **Alarm Clock**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
or ...		**To set all functions to ring the same (on the C2):**
↓ **All Ringer Tones**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Use same melody for all?	**OK**	Confirm.
... then		
Melody 1	**OK**	Confirm melody, e. g. Melody 1 (✓ = activated).
ⓒ		**Long** press (back to idle status).

Adjusting the ringer volume

MENU		Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Audio Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Ringer Volume**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
➡ **OK**		You hear the current volume. Select volume and confirm.
ⓒ		**Long** press (back to idle status).

Activating/deactivating the ringer

All handsets ring when there is an incoming call. You can cancel the ringer on your handset before you answer a call or when the handset is in idle status; the ringer can be cancelled permanently or just for the current call.

	Cancelling the ringer permanently:
*△	Press the star key and hold until the ringer cannot be heard any longer. The ringer is now **permanently** cancelled. The 🔕 icon appears in the display.
	Re-activating the ringer:
*△	Press the star key and **hold**.

To cancel the ringer in **idle status**, press the *△ key and hold until the 🔕 icon appears. The ringer cannot be re-activated while an external call is in progress.

Activating/deactivating advisory tones

Your handset uses "advisory tones" to tell you about different activities and statuses. The following advisory tones can be activated and deactivated individually (the default setting is On).

- **Key click:** Every key press is confirmed.
- **Acknowledge tones:**
  - Confirmation tone (rising tone sequence): at the end of an input/setting, when the handset is placed in the base and when a text message or a new entry arrives in the caller list or answering machine list
  - Error tone (a descending tone sequence): with incorrect inputs
  - End of menu tone: when scrolling at the end of a menu
- **Battery tone:** The batteries must be charged.

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Audio Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Advisory Tones** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
either ...	**Activate/deactivate Key Tones:**
Key Tones **OK**	Confirm (✓ = activated).
or ...	**Activate/deactivate Battery Low:**
↓ **Battery Low** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **On** **OK**	Select and confirm condition (**Off**, **On**, **During Call**), e. g. **On** (checked with ✓).
ⓞ	Press the "end call" key **briefly** to return to the previous menu level.
or ...	**Activate/deactivate Confirmation Tone:**
↓ **Confirmation Tone** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).
... then	
ⓞ	**Long** press (back to idle status).

Resetting a handset to the factory setting

You can reset individual settings and changes you have made. This will not affect entries in the directory, the calls list, or the speed dial list, nor the handset's registration to the base or logos and melodies that you have loaded.

Press ☎ to cancel the reset.

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Handset Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Reset Handset** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
☎	**Long** press (back to idle status).

Factory settings of the handset

Base selection	Best Base	page 15
Earpiece volume	1	page 91
Handsfree volume	3	page 91
Ringer volume	5	page 91
Ringer melody	1	page 91
Auto answer	activated	page 90
Battery tone/Key click/Confirmation tone	activated	page 93
Display language	country specific	page 90
Alarm clock/Appointment (on the C2)	deactivated	page 75/ page 76
Appointment name (on the C2)	deleted	page 76
Last number redial list	empty	page 31
Room monitor/room monitor sensitivity (on the C2)	deactivated/high	page 71/ page 71

Operating with other devices

Setting device type

at the base:	SX205isdn	SX255isdn	SX303isdn	SX353isdn

MENU		Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Set base**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK		Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **Setup user**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device	**OK**	Confirm.
↓ **INT 21**		Select the internal number, e. g. **INT 1121**.
MENU		Open the submenu.
↓ **Device type**	**OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Fax**		Select a device type and confirm, e. g. **Fax**.
MENU		Open the submenu.
Save entry	**OK**	Confirm. The name is now shown in the internal list, including when an internal call is made from this internal number.

i	If the setting is changed from a device type that does not require a receive MSN to one that does, all MSNs that are programmed in the system will be transferred as active receive MSNs for this internal user.

Making calls with devices on the analogue connection (TAE connection)

at the base:	SX205isdn	SX255isdn	SX303isdn	SX353isdn

Telephones with tone dialling (DTMF = dual tone multi-frequency dialling) can be operated on analogue connections. Telephones with pulse dialling are not supported.

i	For notes on making calls with devices on the analogue connection, please refer to the operator's manual for the base.

Activating/deactivating Auto engaged

When Auto engaged is activated, the exchange line becomes engaged as soon as the receiver is picked up. This means that normal internal dialling is no longer possible. However, an internal call can be made as an enquiry call by pressing the (R) key.

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Set base** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **Setup user** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Setup device **OK**	Confirm.
↓ **INT 21**	Select the internal number, e. g., **INT 1121**.
MENU	Open the submenu.
↓ **Auto. seizure** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.

Activating/deactivating repeater mode

You can increase the range of your handsets with the Gigaset Repeater. You can operate up to six repeaters on your base. To ensure the repeater is installed correctly, repeater mode must be activated on the base.

You can use this function to activate and deactivate repeater mode.

By factory default, this repeater capability is deactivated.

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Set base** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **System settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Spec. function** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Repeater** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = activated).
OK	Press the display key to confirm the prompt.
⏻	**Long** press (back to idle status).

Operating when connected to a PABX

i	Note the special features of text messages on PABXs (page 50).

Access code

Precondition: If your telephone is connected to a PABX, you must – depending on your PABX – enter an access code for external calls when you use the machine for the first time. See the operating instructions for your PABX. You can enter a one to four-digit access code.

For incoming calls, the access code is automatically placed in front of the caller's phone number in the display and in the calls lists, and likewise when copied to the directory. The saved phone number can then be dialled e. g. directly from the caller list (see page 32).

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **System settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
Access code **OK**	Confirm.
MENU	Enter access code and open the menu.
Save entry **OK**	Confirm.

i	For manual dialling and entering directory, emergency and direct dial numbers you must also enter the access code.

Dialling options

The KEYPAD function allows you to control certain services by entering sequences of characters and digits.

You should set the KEYPAD function if your telephone is connected to an ISDN PABX or to an exchange (e. g. Centrex), which is controlled by means of a KEYPAD protocol. The digits/characters **0** to **9**, *****, **#** are transmitted as keypad information elements. Please inquire of your service provider about which information and codes you can transmit.

If your telephone is integrated in a Centrex system, the following performance features can be used.

Calling Name Identification (CNI)	When you receive calls from other CENTREX subscribers, the caller's number and name are displayed on the screen.
Message Waiting Indication (MWI)	The display key ✉ is offered on added-feature handsets if new calls are present in the calls list. Calling up the calls list deletes the display key ✉.
CENTREX call	A CENTREX call is announced acoustically in the same way as an internal call.

Setting options

You can switch between the settings **Standard dial** (factory setting), **Auto keypad** and **Dial * and #**.

Standard dial

Once **Standard dial** has been activated, ***** and **#** are not transmitted during dialling, and if ***** and **#** are entered it is not possible to switch to the keypad.

Auto keypad

Once ***** or **#** has been entered, this setting automatically transfers ringing during dialling to the keypad. This automatic switchover is needed for giving commands to the exchange or PABX.

Dial * and #

Once **Dial * and #** has been activated, the ***** and **#** characters are transmitted during dialling as commands to the exchange or PABX.

Regardless of the setting options above, **after dialling** or during the conversation, the phone switches automatically to tone dialling (DTMF), for instance for remote control of an answering machine.

MENU	Open the menu.
↓ **Base Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
OK	Enter system PIN if required (page 78).
↓ **System settings** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Spec. function** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Dial properties** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm.
↓ **Standard dial** **OK**	Select the setting and confirm, e. g. **Standard dial** (✓ = activated).

Making calls with the door subscriber station

on handset:	C2

at the base:	SX205isdn	SX255isdn	SX303isdn	SX353isdn

Calling from the door subscriber station

In a call with the door subscriber station, the following features are not available:

- Hold a call
- Enquiry from a call with the door subscriber station
- Toggling a user at the door subscriber station
- Conference with a user at the door subscriber station
- Forwarding or transferring a call from the door subscriber station

The door subscriber station calls internal users for 20 seconds. If call forwarding from the subscriber station is directed externally, the ringing time is extended to 60 seconds.

	Press the talk key. You are connected to the door subscriber station. The **Door** icon appears on the screen.
... then	
	Press end call key.
or ...	
MENU	Open the menu.
Door open **OK**	Select and confirm to store the door opener. The door opener is opened. The following confirmation is displayed on the screen **Door is opening**. The connection with the door subscriber station is ended automatically when the door is opened.

Call waiting at the door subscriber station

The door subscriber station calls internal users for 20 seconds. If call forwarding from the subscriber station is directed externally, the ringing time is extended to 60 seconds.

Accept call waiting

MENU	Open the menu.
Accept **OK**	Select and confirm to store the door opener. The door opener is opened. The following confirmation is displayed on the screen **Door is opening**. The connection with the door subscriber station is ended automatically when the door is opened.

Press the display key ACCEPT. You accept the waiting call.

If the interrupted call is an internal call, it is disconnected when the waiting call is picked up.

If the interrupted call is an external call, it is placed on hold when the waiting call is picked up. Both parties are shown on the display, the current one is marked.

Changing parties

If the interrupted call is an internal call, you can change conversation partners.

	End your current call. The waiting call becomes a normal call.
	Press the talk key to answer the call.

Internal call with door subscriber station

You can call the door subscriber station internally (page 16).

Appendix

Care

Wipe the base and handset with a **damp** cloth (use no solvent) or an antistatic cloth. **Never** use a dry cloth. This can cause static.

Contact with liquid ⚠

If the handset should come into contact with liquid, **on no account switch the device on**. **Remove all batteries immediately.**

Allow the liquid to drain out of the device, and then pat all parts of the device dry.

Keep the handset with the batteries removed in a warm, dry place for at least 72 hours. In many cases, you will then be able to use it again.

Questions and answers

If you have any questions about the use of your phone, you can contact us 24/7 at **www.my-siemens.com/customercare** . You will find the most frequently asked questions and answers below.

What has happened when ...	Possible cause	Possible solution
... the display is blank?	The handset is not switched on. The batteries are flat.	Press the end call key **for about 2 seconds**. Charge or replace the batteries (page 9).
... the handset fails to respond to a key press?	The keypad lock is activated.	Press the hash key **for about 2 seconds** to deactivate the lock (page 10).
... **Base 1** or **Searching for Base**, for example, is flashing on the screen?	The handset is outside the range of the base. The handset is not registered. The base is not switched on.	Move the handset nearer to the base. Register the handset (page 14). Check the power connector at the base.
... the handset does not ring?	The ringer is switched off.	Switch on the ringer in the handset (page 92) or the base S150.
... the incoming call number is not displayed even though CLIP is set?	Calling Line Identification is blocked.	The caller must ask his network provider to enable the identification of his number (CLI).

What has happened when ...	Possible cause	Possible solution
... the calls list does not indicate a time for a message?	Date/time are not set.	Set the date/time (page 74).
... the answering machine says "PIN is incorrect" during remote operation?	The answering machine PIN entered is incorrect or still set to 0000.	Enter the answering machine PIN again or set a PIN that is different from 0000 (page 78).
... the answering machine does not record any messages or has automatically switched over to 'announce only'?	Its memory is full.	Delete old messages. Play back new messages and delete.
... the handset does not ring after the ISDN number (MSN) has been set up?	The area prefix has been stored with the MSN.	Store MSN **without** area prefix (page 81).
... there are **no incoming calls**?	Call forwarding **Immediately** has been activated. The MSN has not been assigned to the internal user.	Deactivate call forwarding **Immediately** (page 85). Determine the receive MSN (page 83).
... you cannot access the **answering machine**?	The answering machine lock has been activated.	Enter answering machine PIN (page 66).
... you are unable to record any new information or **announcements**?	There is insufficient remaining memory.	Delete old messages/information (page 60). Reduce the quality of the recordings (page 64).
... you have a **PABX** and, after dialling, the wrong connection or no connection is made?	You have entered the wrong prefix or no prefix.	Check and correct the prefix (page 97).
... **the handset** does not ring as set?	There is a different setting for the ringer melody for the MSN.	Change the ringer tone melody (page 84).
... it is not possible to access the **answering machine** from the **handset**?	The handset is not assigned to the receive MSN for the answering machine.	Check assignment (page 62).
... some of the **ISDN functions** do not work as stated?	The ISDN function has not been enabled.	Check with your network provider.
... the handset does not receive an SMS as a text message?	You are not registered with both SMS centres.	Register with SMS centres (page 40).

Service (Customer Care)

You have access to straightforward support concerning with technical aspects of your device and how to operate it through our Online Support on the Internet:

www.my-siemens.com/customercare

This site can be accessed at any time wherever you are. It will give you 24/7 support for all our products. It also provides interactive troubleshooting, a list of FAQs and answers plus operating instructions and current software updates for you to download.

You will also find the FAQs and answers in the **Questions and Answers** section (page 101) of this guide.

If you have any trouble with the equipment, please contact the **Siemens telephone service**:

United Kingdom	0 87 05 33 44 11
Ireland	18 50 77 72 77

The Siemens Service is available to deal with device faults only. Your specialist dealer will be able to help you with any questions about operating your device.

Please address any questions about the DSL or cable connection to your network provider.

Replacement or repair services are not offered in countries where our product is not sold by authorised dealers.

Your Gigaset is intended for operation in your country, as depicted on the underside of the base station. Country-specific conditions have been taken into account.

The CE mark attests to the phone's compliance with the essential requirements of the R&TTE directive.

Excerpt from the original declaration:

"We, Siemens AG, declare, that the above mentioned product is manufactured according to our Full Quality Assurance System certified by CETECOM ICT Services GmbH in compliance with ANNEX V of the R&TTE-Directive 99/5/EC. The presumption of conformity with the essential requirements regarding Council Directive 99/5/EC is ensured."

Senior Approvals Manager

The Declaration of Conformity (DoC) has been signed. In case of need, a copy of the original DoC can be made available via the company hotline.

CE 0682

Specifications

Recommended batteries

Nickel-cadmium (NiCd)	Nickel-metal-hydride (NiMH):
Sanyo N-3U (700 mAh)	Saft RH 6 NiMH 1300 (1300 mAh)
Mobile Power 700 (700 mAh)	Panasonic HHR-110 AA (1100 mAh)
Panasonic 600 DT (600 mAh)	Sanyo HR-3U (1600 mAh)
Emmerich 700 (700 mAh)	GP GP130 AAHC (1300 mAh)
	Varta Phone Power (1300 mAh)
	Emmerich 1300 (1300 mAh)

Handset operating times/charging times

Capacity (mAh)	Standby time (hours)	Calling time (hours)	Charging time (hours)
700	up to 180	more than 10	approx. 5.5
1200	up to 300	more than 17	approx. 11
1600	up to 400	more than 23	approx. 14

These operating and charging times apply only when using the recommended batteries. The battery charge capacity decreases after a few years for technical reasons.

i	For the initial charge we recommend a continuous, uninterrupted charging period (see table), whatever charge status is indicated!

General Specifications

Feature	Value
DECT standard	is supported
GAP standard	is supported
No. of channels	60 duplex channels
Radio frequency range	1880–1900 MHz
Duplex method	Time multiplex, 10 ms frame length
Channel grid	1728 kHz
Bit rate	1152 kbit/s
Modulation	GFSK
Language code	32 kbit/s
Transmission power	10 mW, average power per channel
Range	up to 300 m outdoors, up to 50 m indoors
Environmental conditions for operation	+5 °C to +45 °C; 20 % to 75 % humidity
Dialling mode	DTMF (tone dialling) / DP (dial pulsing)
Dimensions/Handset	Gigaset C1: approx. 151 x 55 x 27 mm (L × W × H) Gigaset C2: approx. 151 x 55 x 27 mm (L x H x W)
Weight	Gigaset C1: Handset with battery cells approx. 130 g Gigaset C2: Handset with battery cells approx. 129 g

Character set chart

Standard characters

Press the relevant key repeatedly or hold it down

	1 x	2 x	3 x	4 x	5 x	6 x	7 x	8 x	9 x	10 x	11 x	12 x	13 x	14 x
1	Space	1	€	£	$	¥	¤							
2 ABC	a	b	c	2	ä	á	à	â	ã	ç				
3 DEF	d	e	f	3	ë	é	è	ê						
4 GHI	g	h	i	4	ï	í	ì	î						
5 JKL	j	k	l	5										
6 MNO	m	n	o	6	ö	ñ	ó	ò	ô	õ				
7 PQRS	p	q	r	s	7	ß								
8 TUV	t	u	v	8	ü	ú	ù	û						
9 WXYZ	w	x	y	z	9	ÿ	ý	æ	ø	å				
0 +	.	,	?	!	0	+	-	:	¿	¡	"	'	;	_
*	Abc--> abc	abc --> 123	*	/	(	)	<	=	>	%				
#	#	@	\	&	§									

Creating and editing text

On the Gigaset C2 you can also use the predictive text function (page 109).

You can create and edit text in a number of ways:

- The cursor is controlled with ⬅ ➡ ⬆ ⬇ .
- Characters (to the left of the cursor) are deleted with ◀C.
- Characters are added to the left of the cursor (page 12).
- To switch from upper case (first letter written in upper case, all other letters in lower case) to lower case, press the (*△) key before you enter the letter. Pressing the (*△) key again switches from lower case letters to digits. Press again to return to upper case letters.
- The first letter of the name of directory entries is automatically capitalised, followed by lower case letters.
- When you press a key **and hold it**, the characters of that key appear in the **bottom display line** and are highlighted one after the other. When you release the key the highlighted character is inserted into the input field.

  You can see in the display whether upper case, lower case or digits are selected:
  - "A" or "a" appears on the bottom display line when you make an entry in the directory.
  - "Abc", "abc" or "123" appears at the top right of the screen when a text message is entered.

Order of directory entries

As a rule, entries in the directory are arranged in alphabetical order, although blank spaces and numerals (digits) take first priority. The **order in which entries occur** is as follows:

1. Space (shown here as ␣)
2. Digits (0–9)
3. Letters (alphabetical)
4. Other characters

If you want to circumvent the alphabetical order of the entries in the directory, insert a space before the name. This entry then goes to the first position (example: "␣Carla"). You can also number the entries with digits (e. g. "1Jane", "2Mary", "3John").

Names prefixed with a star (e. g. "*Jane") appear at the end of the directory.

Guarantee certificate (United Kingdom)

Without prejudice to any claim the user (customer) may have in relation to the dealer or retailer, the customer shall be granted a manufacturer's Guarantee under the conditions set out below:

- In the case of new devices and their components exhibiting defects resulting from manufacturing and/or material faults within 24 months of purchase, Siemens shall, at its own option and free of charge, either replace the device with another device reflecting the current state of the art, or repair the said device. In respect of parts subject to wear and tear (including but not limited to, batteries, keypads, casing), this warranty shall be valid for six months from the date of purchase.
- This Guarantee shall be invalid if the device defect is attributable to improper treatment and/or failure to comply with information contained in the user manuals.
- This Guarantee shall not apply to or extend to services performed by the authorised dealer or the customer themselves (e.g. installation, configuration, software downloads). User manuals and any software supplied on a separate data medium shall be excluded from the Guarantee.
- The purchase receipt, together with the date of purchase, shall be required as evidence for invoking the Guarantee. Claims under the Guarantee must be submitted within two months of the Guarantee default becoming evident.
- Ownership of devices or components replaced by and returned to Siemens shall vest in Siemens.
- This Guarantee shall apply to new devices purchased in the European Union. The Guarantee is issued by Siemens plc, Siemens House, Oldbury, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 8FZ.
- Any other claims resulting out of or in connection with the device shall be excluded from this Guarantee. Nothing in this Guarantee shall attempt to limit or exclude a Customers Statutory Rights, nor the manufacturer's liability for death or personal injury resulting from its negligence.
- The duration of the Guarantee shall not be extended by services rendered under the terms of the Guarantee.
- Insofar as no Guarantee default exists, Siemens reserves the right to charge the customer for replacement or repair.
- The above provisions does not imply a change in the burden of proof to the detriment of the customer.

To invoke this Guarantee, please contact the Siemens telephone service. The relevant number is to be found in the accompanying user guide.

Guarantee certificate (Ireland)

Scope

- This equipment guarantee applies to end users ("customers"). This guarantee does not in any way affect the customer's statutory rights.
- The guarantee applies to the supplied devices and all their components but not to their installation or configuration or to the services provided by the dealer. Manuals and any software supplied on a separate data medium are excluded from the guarantee. This guarantee does not apply to decorative covers or any other personalised

parts or software not included in the scope of supply. The guarantee also does not apply to decorative top or bottom shells for special editions.

- The guarantee provides for devices or components that, despite proper care and use, have demonstrably developed defects due to faulty workmanship and/or faulty materials to be replaced or repaired at our discretion free of charge. The guarantee does not cover normal wear and tear. Alternatively, we reserve the right to replace the defective device with a successor model or reimburse the original purchase price on return of the defective device. Our decision is final. Any legal claims are excluded.
- Claims under the guarantee cannot be made if the defect or damage was caused by improper care or use. Improper care or use includes the following:
  - Opening the device (this is classed as third-party intervention)
  - Manipulating components on the printed circuit board
  - Manipulating the software
  - Defects or damage caused by dropping, breaking, lightning or ingress of moisture. This also applies if defects or damage were caused by mechanical, chemical, radio interference or thermal factors (e.g. microwave, sauna, etc.).
  - Repairs or other work done by persons not authorised by us.
  - Devices fitted with accessories not authorised by Siemens.
- Any further claims due to damage are excluded, such as damage arising outside the device, provided this was not due to gross negligence and/or intent on our part.
- Claims under the guarantee must be made as soon as the defect is noticed.
- A till receipt showing the date of purchase must be presented as proof. Each claim under the guarantee is accepted with the express reservation that subsequent investigations confirm the validity of the claim.
- Any devices or components that are replaced become our property.
- The costs of materials and labour will be borne by us, but not the costs of transport, postage or freight.
- We are entitled, at our discretion, to make technical changes (such as firmware updates) beyond repair or replacement in order to upgrade the device to the latest state of the art. There is no additional charge to the customer for this work. Our decision is final. Any legal claims are excluded.
- The guarantee is valid in the country of purchase. It applies only if the device is operated in the relevant geographical area in accordance with the information on the packaging and in the operating instructions.
- Any further claims are excluded. Siemens is not liable in any circumstances for downtime, loss of profits, loss of data or loss of any other information. The customer alone is responsible for safeguarding such data and information.
- Changes to this guarantee require prior approval by Siemens in writing.

Guarantee period

- The guarantee applies in countries in the EU from 1 January 2002 for a period of 24 months.
- In all other countries the guarantee period shall be the relevant minimum statutory guarantee period, but no longer than 24 months.
- The guarantee period starts on the day of purchase by the customer.
- A successful claim under the guarantee does not extend the guarantee period.
- Work under the guarantee is handled by our Customer Care Centres.

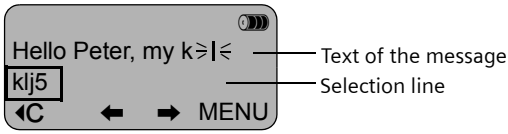
Predictive text

on handset:	C2

The EATONI predictive text helps you to write:

- Text messages,
- Names in the directory,
- Names in the speed dial list.

Each key between 0+ and 9WXYZ is assigned **several letters and characters** which all appear on a **selection line** immediately above the softkeys (beneath the text area) as soon as you press a key. When you are entering letters, the letter you are **most probably** looking for is **greyed**. This letter is at the beginning of the selection line and is transferred to the text area.



If this letter is the one you want, confirm it by pressing the next key. If the letter selected by the EATONI is not the one you want, then press the **hash key** # repeatedly until the required letter appears greyed in the display line and is transferred to the text area.

*	Press the star key **for about 2 seconds**: Switches from abc to Abc, from Abc to 123 and from 123 back to abc mode (applies to the next letter).
#	Goes to the next letter in the selection list (greyed).

Activating/deactivating predictive text

Predictive text is activated and deactivated according to specific functions. Even if you have deactivated EATONI, e. g. when entering a name in the telephone, it is still available for writing text messages.

Precondition: You are in a text input field (text message, name in the directory or speed dial list).

MENU	Press display key to open menu.
↓ **Predictive Text** **OK**	Select the menu item and confirm (✓ = On).
end call	Press the "end call" key **briefly** to return to the text area. Now enter your text.

Menu Tree

Main menu

Instead of scrolling to locate a menu function, you can select a menu function faster by opening the menu and keying in the digit combination ("shortcut").

Example: **MENU** (5 JKL) (4 GHI) (1 ∞) for "set ringer melody for external calls".

With the telephone in the idle status, press **MENU** (open the menu).

Gigaset C1:

With the telephone in the **idle status**, press **MENU** (open menu):

1	SMS	Write message					
		Inbox					
		Outbox					
		Available memory					
4	Calender/ Clock	4-3	Date/Time				
		4-4	Time Mode				
5	Audio Settings	5-1	Earpiece Volume				
		5-2	Handsfree Volume				
		5-3	Ringer Volume				
		5-4	Ringer Melody	5-4-1	External Calls	5-4-1-1	Melody 1
						5-4-1-...	[to]
						5-4-1-0	Melody 10
				5-4-2	Internal Calls	5-4-2-1	Melody 1
						5-4-2-...	[to]
						5-4-2-0	Melody 10
		5-5	Advisory Tones	5-5-1	Key Tones		
				5-5-2	Battery Low	5-5-2-1	Off
						5-5-2-2	On
						5-5-2-3	During Call
				5-5-3	Confirmation Tone		
7	Handset Settings	7-1	Auto Answer				
		7-2	Language				
		7-3	Register Handset				
		7-4	Select Base	*(List)*			
		7-5	Reset Handset				

8	Base Settings	→ *For continuation see submenu* Base Settings *(page 112)*
9	Voice Mail	AM1
		AM2
		AM3

→ *For continuation see submenu* Voice Mail *(page 113)*

Gigaset C2:

With the telephone in the **idle status**, press **MENU** (open menu):

3	Additional Features	3-1	Room Monitor				
		3-2	Walk and Talk				
4	Calender/ Clock	4-1	Set Appointment				
		4-2	Alarm Clock				
		4-3	Date/Time				
		4-4	Time Mode				
5	Audio Settings	5-1	Earpiece Volume				
		5-2	Handsfree Volume				
		5-3	Ringer Volume				
		5-4	Ringer Melody	5-4-1	External Calls	5-4-1-1	Melody 1
						5-4-1-...	[to]
						5-4-1-0	Melody 10
				5-4-2	Internal Calls	5-4-2-1	Melody 1
						5-4-2-...	[to]
						5-4-2-0	Melody 10
				5-4-3	Appointment	5-4-3-1	Melody 1
						5-4-3-...	[to]
						5-4-3-0	Melody 10
				5-4-4	Alarm Clock	5-4-4-1	Melody 1
						5-4-4-...	[to]
						5-4-4-0	Melody 10
				5-4-5	All Ringer Tones	5-4-5-1	Melody 1
						5-4-5-...	[to]
						5-4-5-0	Melody 10
		5-5	Advisory Tones	5-5-1	Key Tones		
				5-5-2	Battery Low	5-5-2-1	Off
						5-5-2-2	On
						5-5-2-3	During Call

				5-5-3	Confirmation Tone
7	Handset Settings	7-1	Auto Answer		
		7-2	Language		
		7-3	Register Handset		
		7-4	Select Base	*(List)*	
		7-5	Reset Handset		
8	Base Settings	→ *For continuation see submenu* Base Settings *(page 112)*			
9	Voice Mail	AM1	→ *For continuation see submenu* Voice Mail *(page 113)*		
		AM2			
		AM3			

"Base Settings" submenu

To begin: with the handset in **idle status**, press **MENU**, ⬇ **Base Settings OK** or **MENU** 8

Missed calls	*(phone number list) -> Caller list menu (page 32)*			
Accepted calls	*(phone number list) -> Caller list menu (page 32)*			
Ext. call forw.	*(List of existing external diverts)*	New entry	*MSN list*	Immediately
				On busy
				On no reply
		Activate?	Deactivate? *– if divert activated*	
		Edit entry	Immediately	
			On busy	
			On no reply	
		Delete entry		
Settings	Security	Change PIN	(Enter PIN)	
		Emergency nos.	*Emergency numbers (preconfigured)*	
			Emergency numbers (personal)	Change number
				Delete number
				Display number
	Setup user	Setup device	*Internal number -> Submenu for specific type of device*	
		De-reg. device	*Select device*	
	System settings	Access code		
		AM auto. pickup		
		Network Mailb.	*Telephone number will be displayed*	Change number
				Delete number
		Spec. function	Factory setting	Reset all
			Dial properties	Standard dial
				Auto keypad

				Dial * and #
			Repeater	
	ISDN settings	Set up MSN	*List of all set up MSNs*	Edit entry
				Ringer melody
				Delete entry
				Display entry
		Unknown call	✔ = on	
	Service centres	*(List of SMS service centres)*	Edit entry	
			Serv.centre on?	*or* Serv.centre off?
			Delete entry	

"Voice Mail" submenu

To begin: With the handset in **idle status**, press **MENU,** ⬇ **Voice Mail OK** or **MENU** 9wxyz , select an answering machine, e. g. **AM1**, and confirm with **OK**.

Messages	*List of all messages AMx*	Continue		
		Delete message		
		Call back		
		NET list		
		Repeat		
		Del.old mes-sages		
		Display		
		Status to 'new'		
		Save number		
		Speed	Slow	
			Normal speed	
			Fast	
			Very fast	
		Exit		
Memos	Record memo			
	Play memo	*List of all memos AMx*	Continue	
			Delete curr.memo	
			Repeat	
			Delete old memos	
			Status to 'new'	
			Speed	Slow
				Normal speed
				Fast
				Very fast
			Exit	
Announce-ments	Announcement 1	→	Select	
	Announcement 2		Record	
	Announcem. only		Play back	
			Delete	

	Concl.announcem	Record	
		Play back	
		Delete	
Settings	Message/Memo	Message length	1 minute
			2 minutes
			3 minutes
			Maximum
		Time stamp	
	No. of rings	Automatic 2/4	
		1 ring tone	
		to	
		9 ring tone	
	Automatic pause		
	Remote options	Remote control	
		Remote delete	
	Change AM-PIN		
	AM lock		
	AM quality	High quality	
		Long recording	
	Aut. listen in	Activate?	*or* Deactivate? – *if activated*
		Select HS	
	SMS notificat.	Activate?	*or* Deactivate? – *if activated*
		Change number	
		Delete number	
Activate?	*or* Deactivate? – *if currently activated*		

Directory key and speed dial list key

Press the directory key ⓜ or the speed dial list key ⓒ, select an entry with ⬇ and press **MENU** to open the required list. The following **menu functions** are available:

New Entry
Use Number
Edit Entry
Delete Entry
Delete List

Index

A

Accepting a call 17
Access code 97
Acknowledge tones 93
Activating
  Advisory tones 93
  Alarm clock 75
  Answer 90
  Answering machine 53
  Answering machine automatic pause 65
  Answering machine voice announcement 64
  Appointment 76
  Automatic pickup on the AM 67
  Call forwarding 85
  Call waiting 87
  Handset 10
  Listening in on the answering machine 66
  Notification via text message (AM) . 68
  Repeater 96
  Ringer 92
  Room monitor 71
  Walk and Talk mode 73
Activating automatic pause 65
Activating/deactivating advisory tones 93
Activating/deactivating keypad protection 1, 2, 10
Adjusting the loudspeaker volume . . . 91
Alarm clock 75
  Activate/deactivate 75
  Machine 75
Alarm to internal/external (room monitor) 71
AM1 52
AM3 52
Analogue
  Making calls with analogue devices 95
Announce only (answering machine) . 52
Announcement (answering machine) 52
Anny Way 36, 37
  Register/de-register 40
Answer
  Activate 90
  Auto answer 90
  Deactivate 90
Answer and record (answering machine)
  Setting quality 65
  Setting time 65
Answer and record (answering machine) . . . 52
Answering machine 52
  Access to list 1, 2
  Activate 53
  Activating automatic pause 65
  Activating/deactivating lock 66
  AM on the network 88
  Assigning a handset 66
  Assigning a receive MSN 62
  Automatic listen in 66
  Automatic pickup 67
  Changing an announcement 54
  Checking settings 61
  Deactivate 53
  Defining PIN 66
  Delete announcement 55
  Deleting memos 60
  Deleting messages 60
  Denying 66
  Hiding/showing 63
  Memos 52
  Notification via text message 68
  Phone numbers in the directory 61
  Play back messages 57
  Playback speed 59
  Playing back an announcement 55
  Playing back memos 59
  Record memo 55
  Recording an announcement 54
  Remote control 66
  Returning a call during playback . . . 58
  Selecting 53
  Setting recording quality 64
  Setting recording time 64
  Specifying the number of rings before AM starts 64
  Spoken date/time 64
  Two-way recording 56
Answering machine see also Network mailbox

Appointment
Activate/set 76
Deactivate 77
Name 76
Not kept 77
Setting the ringer 91
Area code 43
Area prefix, see area code
Assign
Phone number (MSN) 83
Receive MSN 83
Ringer melody for MSN 84
Send MSN 83
Assigning the ringer melody 84
Automatic
Answer 90
Automatic pickup on the AM 67

B

Back to idle state 1, 2
Base
Change 15
Selecting 15
Setting up 7
Batteries
Charging 9
Charging status display 9
Display 9
Inserting 9
Recommended 7, 104
Battery charging status display . . . 1, 2, 9
Battery tone 93
Belt clip 10
Best base 15, 72
Brief overview of the handset 1

C

Call
Accept 1, 2, 17
Ending 1, 2, 16
Transfer internally (connect) 16
Two-way recording 56
Unknown 18
Call forwarding
Activate/deactivate 85
Clear 86
Editing an entry 86
External 85
Set up destination 85
Call Hold 25
Call Waiting 25, 87
Call waiting
Accept 25
Activate 87
at the door subscriber station 100
Deactivate 87
Rejecting 25
Callback
Accept 20
Activating 20
Clear 20
When the call is not answered 19
When the number is busy 19
Call-by-Call numbers 26, 35
Caller list 32
Delete an entry 34
Opening the 33
Calling
External 16
Internal 16
Calling back a caller 33
Calling back an SMS sender 49
Calling back from calls list 33
Cancel
Function 1, 2
Cancel function 1, 2
Care of the telephone 101
CCBS 19
CCNR 19
Centrex 97
CF 85
Change
Announcement (answering machine) 54
Display language 90
Loudspeaker volume 91
Name for an internal party 80
Ringer 91
SMS in the outgoing message list . .44
System PIN 78
Volume in handsfree mode 19
Changing the display language 90
Changing the input language (SMS) . .41
Changing the system PIN 78
Character set chart 105
Characters
Clear 106
Enter 41
Overwriting 12

Charging the batteries 9
Check
Settings (answering machine) 61
Clear
Characters 12
External call forwarding 86
Phone number for the send centre . 38
SMS entry 43
SMS incoming message list 48
SMS outgoing message list 44
CLI 101
CLIP 17
CLIR 17
CNI 98
COLP 17
COLR 17
Conference call 23
Confirmation tone 12, 93
Correcting wrong inputs 12
Creating and editing text 106
CW 25, 87

D

Date and time 74
Date setting 74
Deactivate
Advisory tones 93
Alarm clock 75
Answer 90
Answering machine 53
Answering machine voice announcement 64
Appointment call 77
Automatic pickup on the AM 67
Call forwarding 85
Call waiting 87
Handset 10
Listening in on the answering machine 66
Notification via text message (AM) . 68
Repeater 96
Ringer 92
Walk and Talk mode 73
Deactivate SMS send centre 39
Default settings
Handset 94
restore 89
Delete
Announcement on the answering machine 55
directory entry 29
Entry in speed dial list 29
ISDN phone numbers 82
Last number redial list 31
Memos (answering machine) 60
Messages (answering machine) 60
Delete key 11
Deleting 29
De-registering
From SMS centre 40
Handset 14, 15
Deutsche Telekom AG 36
SMS centre 40
Devices
Making calls with analogue devices . 95
Dialling
Cancel 16
With the directory 28
With the speed dial list 28
Directory 26
Adding a phone number 30, 61
Adding telephone number to the directory 30
Adding the phone number of an SMS message sender 49
Copy and edit an entry 28
Delete an entry 29
Dialling 28
Display and edit an entry 28
Marking an entry as VIP 29
Opening the 1, 2
Order of entries 106
Selecting a telephone number from the directory 30
Send 30
Send an entry to a handset 30
Storing a number 27
Use to input telephone number 30
Directory key 1, 2, 8, 11
Display
12/24 hour display 74
Caller's phone number 18
Changing language 90
Display keys 1, 2, 8, 11
In idle status 12
Memory 40
Missed appointments 77

Network mailbox message 89
Phone number (CLI/CLIP) 17
Removing protective film 9
Door subscriber station
Call waiting 100
Internal call 100
Making calls. 99

E

Earpiece mode 1, 2, 19
EATONI 26, 42, 109
ECT. 24
Emergency numbers 79
Enable
SMS send centre 39
End call key. 1, 2, 16
Enquiry call
External. 21
Internal 22
Entry (directory)
Clear 29
Display and edit 28
Find and dial 28
Error message, see SMS
Error tone 12, 93
Errors when
Receiving an SMS. 51
Sending an SMS. 50
Exit
Call 1, 2
External call. 16
Internal call 16

F

Fast access 88
Network mailbox 88
For access code, see
Forwarding a text message 48
Forwarding calls 85

G

Gigaset repeater 96
Group call to internal users 17

H

Handset
Activate/deactivate. 10
As room monitor in Walk and Talk mode 72
Brief overview. 1, 2
Call 16
Change for best reception 15
Change to another base 15
Charging times 104
Deactivate 10
Default settings 94
De-register 15
Idle status. 12
Machine 10
Operating and charging times 104
Operating time 104
Preparing to use 9
preparing to use 9
Register on another base. 15
Registering 14
Restore factory settings. 94
Settings (individual) 90
Transferring a call 24
use as room monitor. 70
Handset charging times 104
Handset idle status. 12
Handsfree
Activate/deactivate 19
Adjust volume 13, 19
Handsfree key 1, 2, 8, 11
Hash key 1, 2, 10
Hearing aids. 7
Hide (answering machine) 63

I

Incoming message list (SMS) 41, 46
Clear 48
Opening the 46
Initiate dialling. 1, 2
Inserting the batteries 9
Internal
call with door subscriber station . .100
Enquiry call. 22
making calls 16
Internal key 11
Internal party, changing the name . . .80
ISDN phone numbers (MSN)
clear. 82
setting up. 82

K

Key 1 (answering machine) 1, 2
Key click 93

Key press (confirmation tone) 93
Keypad 98
Keys
Delete key 11
Directory key 1, 2, 8, 11
Display keys 1, 2, 8, 11
End call key 2, 16
Handsfree key 1, 2, 8, 11
Hash key 1, 2, 10
Internal key 11
Last number redial key 11
Menu key 11
Message key 1, 2, 32
Of the handset 1, 2
OK key 11
On/Off key 1, 2
Recall key 1, 2
Rocker key 8, 11
Speed dial list key 1, 2
Star key 1, 2
Talk key 1, 2, 8, 11, 16

L

Last number redial
Delete list 31
Key 11
Manually 31
Last number redial key 11
Last number redial list 31
Linking
Call-by-Call number with phone number 35
SMS 41
Liquid, contact with 101
List
Delete last number redial list 31
Directory list 26
Internal list 80
Last number redial 31
SMS incoming message list 46
SMS outgoing message list 43
Speed dialling 26
Listening in on the answering machine 66
Loudspeaker volume 91

M

Make an external call 16
Making calls
Accept call waiting 25
Answering a call 17
Callback when the call is not answered 19
Callback when the number is busy . . 19
Calling Line Identification 17
Conference call 23
External 16
Handsfree 19
Making an external call 16
Making an internal call 16
Reject the waiting call 25
To several users 21
Toggling 23
With the door subscriber station . . . 99
Manual
Last number redial 31
Registration 14
Medical appliances 7
Melody (ringer tone) 91
Memos, see Answering Machine
Menu
End tone 93
Key 11
Tree 110
Message key 1, 2
Open list 47
Opening lists 32
Messages, see Answering Machine
Microphone 1, 2
Move cursor 12, 106
MSN 81
Assigning the ringer melody 84
Multiple subscriber number 81
Setting up/deleting 82
Multiple Subscriber Number (MSN) . . . 81

N

Network mailbox
Configuring for fast access 88
Viewing message 89
Network provider 26
Notes (spoken) see Memo
Number, see Phone number or Entry

O

OK key 11
On/Off key 1, 2
Open

Battery compartment 9
Caller list 33
Directory 1, 2
Internal list 80
SMS incoming message list. 46
SMS outgoing message list 43
Speed dial list 1, 2
Opening lists. 32
Opening the battery compartment. . . . 9
Operating the answering
Machine 52
Messages. 52
Remote control 52
Operating time for handset 104
In room monitor mode 70
In Walk and Talk mode 72
Order in directory 106
Outgoing message list 41, 43
Outside line code 27

P

PABX
Access code 38
Operating when connected to a PABX 97
Text messages to PABXs 50
Play back
Announcement on the answering machine 55
Playback speed
Answering machine 59
Predictive text 109
Activate/deactivate. 109
Prefix, see area code
Preparing the telephone
Handset. 9
Putting a call on hold. 25

Q

Questions and answers 101

R

Reading an SMS entry 43
Recall key 1, 2
Receive MSN
Assigning. 83
Assigning for answering machine . . 62
Receiving an SMS 36, 46
Record
Announcement (answering machine) 54
Call 56
Memo on the answering machine . .55
Registering
Handsets 14
SMS centre 40
Registering/de-registering with an SMS centre 40
Remote control
Operating the answering. 52
Removing protective film (display) 9
Repeater 96
Activate 96
Deactivate 96
Replying to a text message 48
Reset, see Factory settings
Resetting handset
To factory setting 94
Ringer
Activate/deactivate 1, 2, 92
Changing 91
Set volume 91
Setting a melody. 91
Wake-up call/Appointment 91
Rocker key 8, 11
Room monitor 70
Activating. 71
Alarm to internal/external 71
Deactivate 71
Deactivate remotely 72
Setting the sensitivity 71
Using in Walk and Talk mode 72

S

Safety precautions 7
Script. 105
Security settings. 78
Select (base) 15
Send
Directory entry to a handset 30
SMS 36, 41, 42
SMS in the outgoing message list . .44
Send an e-mail, see SMS
Send centre, see SMS
Send MSN 81
Assigning 83
Service provider 36

Set
Recording quality 65
Recording time 65
Set time by 74
Setting 62
Alarm clock 75
Appointment 76
Date 74
Device type 95
Display language 90
Handset (individual) 90
Loudspeaker volume 91
Playback speed on the AM 59
Ringer for appointment 91
Ringer for wake-up call 91
Ringer melody 91
Ringer volume 91
System 80
Time 74
Walk and Talk mode 73
Setting the answering machine 62
Setting the device type 95
Setting up
ISDN phone numbers 82
Short Message Service, see SMS
Shortcut 110
Show (answering machine) 63
Signal tone, see Advisory tones
SMS 36
Activate send centre 39
Anny Way 36
Calling back message sender 49
Change input language 41
Clear 43, 48
Deactivating send centre 39
Delete incoming message list 48
Deleting the outgoing message list . 44
De-register from the SMS centre . . . 40
Editing in the outgoing message list 44
Entering e-mail address 45
Errors when receiving 51
Errors when sending 50
Forward 48
Incoming message list 46
Managing SMS service centres 37
Opening the incoming message list 46
Opening the outgoing message list. 43
Phone numbers in the directory . . . 49
Predictive text 109
Read 43, 48
Receiving 36, 46
Register with the SMS centre. 40
Reply to 48
Requirements 36
Saving 42
Self-help with error messages 51
Send 36, 41, 42
Send a text message to an e-mail address 45
Send centre 36
Send e-mail 46
Sending as an e-mail 45
Sending messages in the outgoing message list 44
Sending to a PABX 50
Storage capacity 40
Text message 36
Writing 41
SMS centres, managing phone numbers 38
Specifications 104
Speed dial key 26
Speed dial list 26
Delete a single entry 29
Dialling 28
Edit a single entry 28
Opening the 1, 2
Storing a number 27
View a single entry 28
Speed dial list key 1, 2
Star key 1, 2
Storage capacity, see SMS
Storage space in the SMS memory . . . 40
Storing
Phone number in the speed dial list . 27
SMS 42
Telephone number in the directory . 27
Switch
Earpiece to handsfree mode 1, 2
Handsfree to earpiece mode 1, 2
Switch off, see Deactivate
System settings 80

T

Talk key 1, 2, 8, 11, 16
Telephone
Care 101
Contact with liquid 101
Preparing to use 9

Telephone number
Adding to the directory 30
Adding to the directory (AM) 61
Adding to the directory (SMS) 49
Assigning (MSN) 83
Display caller's (CLIP) 17
Input from directory 30
Managing numbers for SMS centres 38
Pick from directory 30
Storing in the directory 27
Storing in the speed dial list 27
Withhold identification 17, 18
Text entry
Toggle between upper/lower case . 1, 2
Text message 36
Time mode 74
Toggling 23
Tone
Battery tone 93
Confirmation tone 12, 93
End of menu tone 93
Error tone 12, 93
Two-way recording 56

V

Viewing a message from the network mailbox 89
VIP (directory entry) 29
Volume
Adjust in handsfree mode 19
Loudspeaker volume 91
Ringer volume 91

W

Wake-up call
Deactivate 75
Setting the ringer 91
Walk and Talk 72
Walk and Talk mode
Activate/deactivate 73
Using a handset as a room monitor . 70
Warning tone, see advisory tones
Wireless amplifier see Repeater
Withhold
Calling Line Identification 17
Writing a text message 41
Wrong inputs (correcting) 12